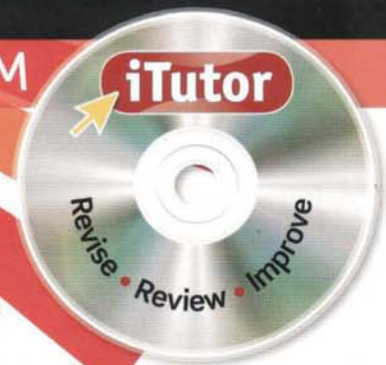


**third**  
edition

# ENGLISH FILE

Elementary Student's Book

with DVD-ROM



Christina Latham-Koenig  
Clive Oxenden  
Paul Seligson

**OXFORD**

آکادمی آنلاین زبان انگلیسی 24Talk

# Contents

	Grammar	Vocabulary	Pronunciation
<b>1</b>			
4	<b>A</b> My name's Hannah, not Anna	verb <i>be</i> ☒, subject pronouns: <i>I, you, etc.</i>	days of the week, numbers 0–20, greetings
6	<b>B</b> All over the world	verb <i>be</i> ☒ and ☐	the world, numbers 21–100
8	<b>C</b> Open your books, please	possessive adjectives: <i>my, your, etc.</i>	classroom language
10	PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 1 Arriving in London		
<b>2</b>			
12	<b>A</b> A writer's room	<i>a / an</i> , plurals; <i>this / that / these / those</i>	things
14	<b>B</b> Stars and Stripes	adjectives	colours, adjectives, modifiers: <i>quite / very / really</i>
16	<b>C</b> After 300 metres, turn right	imperatives, <i>let's</i>	feelings
18	REVISE AND CHECK 1&2		
<b>3</b>			
20	<b>A</b> Things I love about Britain	present simple ☒ and ☐	verb phrases
22	<b>B</b> Work and play	present simple ☒	jobs
24	<b>C</b> Love online	word order in questions	question words
26	PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 2 Coffee to take away		
<b>4</b>			
28	<b>A</b> Is she his wife or his sister?	<i>Whose...?</i> , possessive 's	family
30	<b>B</b> What a life!	prepositions of time ( <i>at, in, on</i> ) and place ( <i>at, in, to</i> )	everyday activities
32	<b>C</b> Short life, long life?	position of adverbs and expressions of frequency	adverbs and expressions of frequency
34	REVISE AND CHECK 3&4		
<b>5</b>			
36	<b>A</b> Do you have the X Factor?	<i>can / can't</i>	verb phrases: <i>buy a newspaper, etc.</i>
38	<b>B</b> Love your neighbours	present continuous	verb phrases
40	<b>C</b> Sun and the City	present simple or present continuous?	the weather and seasons
42	PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 3 In a clothes shop		
<b>6</b>			
44	<b>A</b> Reading in English	object pronouns: <i>me, you, him, etc.</i>	phone language
46	<b>B</b> Times we love	<i>like + (verb + -ing)</i>	the date; ordinal numbers
48	<b>C</b> Music is changing their lives	revision: <i>be</i> or <i>do</i> ?	music
50	REVISE AND CHECK 5&6		



## Grammar

## Vocabulary

## Pronunciation

## 7

52	<b>A</b> At the National Portrait Gallery	past simple of <i>be</i> : <i>was / were</i>	word formation: <i>paint &gt; painter</i>	sentence stress
54	<b>B</b> Chelsea girls	past simple: regular verbs	past time expressions	<i>-ed</i> endings
56	<b>C</b> A night to remember	past simple: irregular verbs	<i>go, have, get</i>	sentence stress
58	PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 4 Getting lost			

## 8

60	<b>A</b> A murder story	past simple: regular and irregular	irregular verbs	past simple verbs
62	<b>B</b> A house with a history	<i>there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns</i>	the house	<i>/eɪ/</i> and <i>/ɪə/</i> , sentence stress
64	<b>C</b> A night in a haunted hotel	<i>there was / there were</i>	prepositions: place and movement	silent letters
66	REVISE AND CHECK 7&8			

## 9

68	<b>A</b> What I ate yesterday	countable / uncountable nouns; <i>a / an, some / any</i>	food	the letters <i>ea</i>
70	<b>B</b> White gold	quantifiers: <i>how much / how many, a lot of, etc.</i>	food containers	<i>/ʃ/</i> and <i>/s/</i>
72	<b>C</b> Quiz night	comparative adjectives	high numbers	<i>/ə/</i> , sentence stress
74	PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 5 At a restaurant			

## 10

76	<b>A</b> The most dangerous road...	superlative adjectives	places and buildings	consonant groups
78	<b>B</b> CouchSurf round the world!	<i>be going to</i> (plans), future time expressions	holidays	sentence stress
80	<b>C</b> What's going to happen?	<i>be going to</i> (predictions)	verb phrases	the letters <i>oo</i>
82	REVISE AND CHECK 9&10			

## 11

84	<b>A</b> First impressions	adverbs (manner and modifiers)	common adverbs	word stress
86	<b>B</b> What do you want to do?	verbs + <i>to</i> + infinitive	verbs that take the infinitive	sentence stress
88	<b>C</b> Men, women, and the internet	articles	the internet	word stress
90	PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 6 Going home			

## 12

92	<b>A</b> Books and films	present perfect	irregular past participles	sentence stress
94	<b>B</b> I've never been there!	present perfect or past simple?	more irregular past participles	irregular past participles
96	<b>C</b> The <i>English File</i> questionnaire	revision: question formation	revision: word groups	revision: sounds
98	REVISE AND CHECK 11&12			

100 Communication

101 Writing

102 Listening

124 Grammar Bank

148 Vocabulary Bank

165 Irregular verbs

166 Sound Bank



Hi, I'm Mike.  
 What's your name?

Hannah. Nice to  
 meet you.

# 1A My name's Hannah, not Anna

## 1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a (1 2)) Look at the pictures. Listen and number them 1-4.



b Listen again and complete the gaps.

- A Hi, I'm Mike. What's your <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B Hannah.  
 A <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B Hannah!
- A What's your phone <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B It's 7894 132 456.  
 A <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. See you on Saturday. Bye.  
 B Goodbye.
- A <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Mum. This is Hannah.  
 B <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Nice to meet you.  
 C Nice to <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you, Anna.  
 B <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ name's Hannah.  
 C Sorry, Hannah.
- A Hi, <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. You're early!  
 B Hello, Mrs Archer. How are <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 C I'm very well, <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you, Anna. And you?  
 B <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, thanks.  
 A It's Hannah, Mum.

c Complete the gaps with a word from the list.

- Fine Hi I'm... Thanks Bye
- Hello = \_\_\_\_\_  
 My name's... = \_\_\_\_\_  
 Very well = \_\_\_\_\_  
 Thank you = \_\_\_\_\_  
 Goodbye = \_\_\_\_\_

- d (1 3)) Listen and repeat some phrases from the dialogue.  
 Copy the rhythm.
- e (1 4)) In groups of three, practise the dialogues with the sound effects. Change roles.
- f Introduce yourself to other students.

Hello, I'm Antonio.  
 What's your name? (Carla. Nice to meet you.)



## 2 GRAMMAR verb be ⊕, subject pronouns

a Complete the sentences with *are, is, or am*.

I'm Mike. = I \_\_\_\_\_ Mike.  
 My name's Hannah. = My name \_\_\_\_\_ Hannah.  
 You're early. = You \_\_\_\_\_ early.  
 It's 7894 132 456. = It \_\_\_\_\_ 7894 132 456.

b ► p.124 Grammar Bank 1A. Learn more about verb *be* ⊕ and subject pronouns, and practise them.

c 16)) Listen and repeat the pronouns and contractions.

d 17)) Listen. Say the contraction. )) I am ( I'm

e In pairs, try to remember the names in your class. Say *He's / She's* \_\_\_\_\_.







f Stand up and speak to other students.

Hi Carla. How are you? ( Fine thanks. And you?

## 3 PRONUNCIATION

vowel sounds, word stress

a 18)) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

					
fish	tree	cat	egg	train	bike
it	he	am	very	they	I
this	we	thanks	well	name	Hi
	meet				Bye

b ► p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the example words and spellings for the sounds in a.

**Word stress**  
 Multi-syllable words have one stressed syllable.  
 so|rry good|bye Sa|tur|day

c 19)) Listen and underline the stressed syllable in these words.

air|port com|pu|ter e|mail ka|ra|te  
 ho|tel mu|se|um sala|d te|nnis  
 pas|ta in|ter|net bas|ket|ball sand|wich

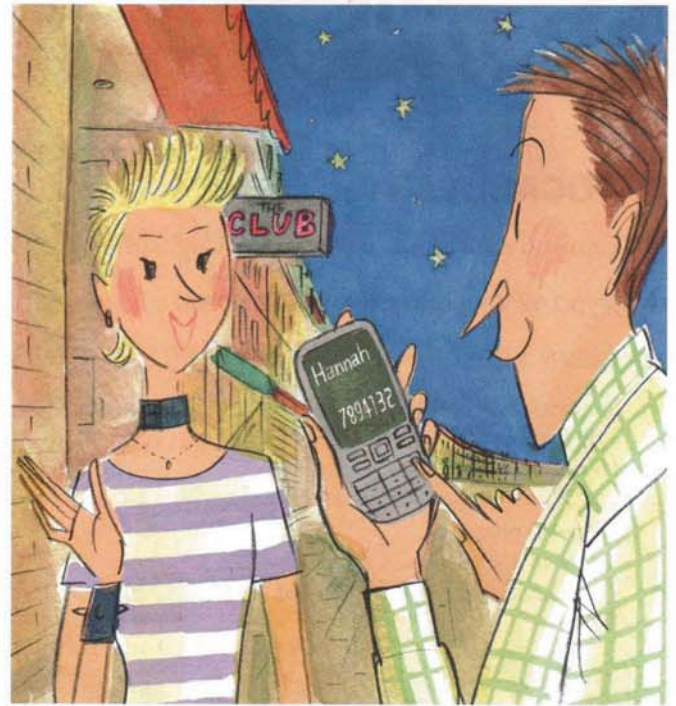
d Write the words from c in the chart.

food	technology	sports	places

e In pairs, write more words that you know in each column. How do you pronounce them?

## 4 VOCABULARY

days of the week, numbers 0-20



a Look at the picture. Can you remember what Mike and Hannah say?

b ► p.148 Vocabulary Bank Days and numbers. Do parts 1 and 2.

c 112)) Listen and say the next day or number.

)) Monday, Tuesday ( Wednesday

d What's your phone number? What day is it today? And tomorrow?

## 5 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 113)) Listen. Where are they? Write 1-6 in the boxes.

- airport Gate number \_\_\_\_\_  
 sandwich bar \_\_\_\_\_ euros \_\_\_\_\_ cents  
 hotel Room \_\_\_\_\_  
 museum Closed on \_\_\_\_\_  
 taxi \_\_\_\_\_ Manchester Road  
 school Classes on \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_

b Listen again. Write a number or a day in each space.

c 114)) Listen and respond.

)) Hello. Nice to meet you. ( Nice to meet you.



Where are you from?

I'm from Ireland.

# 1B All over the world

## 1 VOCABULARY the world

- a Can you name three countries in English?  
b ➤ p.149 Vocabulary Bank *The world*.  
c (1 17) Listen. Say the nationality.  
    )) Scotland ( Scottish  
d In pairs, do the quiz.

**Useful phrases**  
*I think it's in Italy.*  
*I think it's Russian, but I'm not sure.*

## 1 Where are these capital cities?

- a Canberra \_\_\_\_\_  
b Prague \_\_\_\_\_  
c Warsaw \_\_\_\_\_  
d Ankara \_\_\_\_\_  
e Edinburgh \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 What country is the money from?

- a the dollar \_\_\_\_\_  
b the yuan \_\_\_\_\_  
c the rouble \_\_\_\_\_  
d the pound \_\_\_\_\_  
e the yen \_\_\_\_\_

## 3 What country is the food from?

- a tapas \_\_\_\_\_  
b goulash \_\_\_\_\_  
c pasta \_\_\_\_\_  
d tacos \_\_\_\_\_

## 4 What nationality are the flags?

- a  \_\_\_\_\_  
b  \_\_\_\_\_  
c  \_\_\_\_\_  
d  \_\_\_\_\_

## 5 (1 18) What national anthem is it? Write the nationality.

- a \_\_\_\_\_ c \_\_\_\_\_  
b \_\_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_\_

## 6 (1 19) What language is it? Write a-d in the boxes.


- Turkish     Russian  
 Chinese     Irish (Gaelic)

# THE WORLD QUIZ




## 2 PRONUNCIATION /ə/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/

**The /ə/ sound**  
The /ə/ sound is the most common vowel sound in English. The /ə/ sound has many different spellings, e.g. *Hello, Saturday, Britain*

- a (1 20) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	computer	American	Argentinian
		Scotland	Switzerland

- b (1 21) Listen and repeat the sound pictures and sentences. Practise with a partner.

- 1  chess    Charles is Czech, not French.  
2  shower    She's Polish or Russian. I'm not sure.  
3  jazz    We're German and they're Japanese.

- c ➤ p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the example words and spellings for the sounds in a and b.

**Languages**  
The word for a language is usually the same as the nationality adjective, e.g. in Italy the language is Italian.



### 3 GRAMMAR verb be $\square$ and $\square$

- a (1.22) Cover the dialogues. Listen to three interviews in London. Which countries are the people from?
- b Read the dialogues. Complete with *I'm*, *I'm not*, *are*, *aren't*, *is*, or *isn't*.



- 1 A Are you English?  
B No, \_\_\_\_\_ English.  
\_\_\_\_\_ Scottish.  
A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you from  
in Scotland?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ from Glasgow.



- 2 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you  
from?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ from Australia,  
from Darwin.  
A Where's Darwin? \_\_\_\_\_  
it near Sydney?  
B No, it \_\_\_\_\_. It's in the  
north.  
A \_\_\_\_\_ it nice?  
B Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_. It's  
beautiful.



- 3 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you  
from?  
B We're from Columbus, Ohio,  
in the USA.  
A \_\_\_\_\_ you on holiday?  
C No, we \_\_\_\_\_. We're  
students.

c Listen and check.

d > p.124 Grammar Bank 1B. Learn more about verb *be*  $\square$  and  $\square$ , and practise it.

e (1.24) Listen and respond with a short answer.

Is Sydney the capital of Australia? (No, it isn't.)

f With a partner, write three questions beginning *Is...?* or *Are...?* Ask them to another pair.

### 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

sentence stress



#### Sentence stress

In sentences we stress the important words.

Where's she from? She's from **China**.

a (1.25) Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

1 A Where are you from?

B I'm from **Dublin**.

2 A Are you **American**?

B No, I'm not. I'm **Australian**.

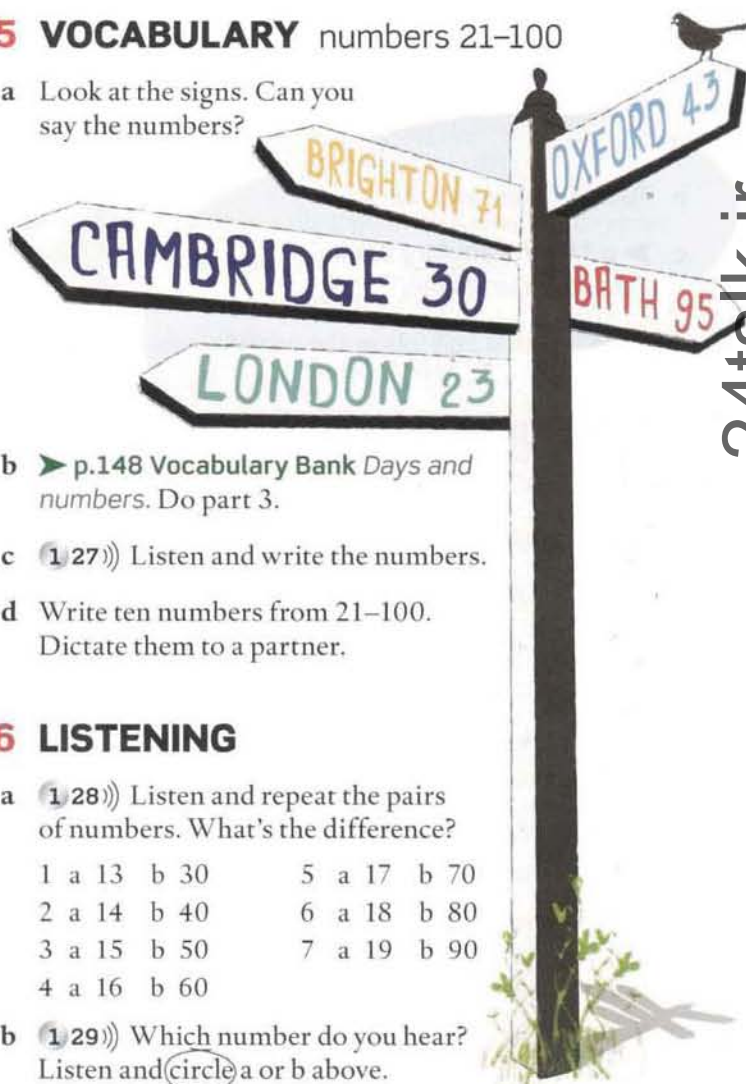
b Practise the dialogues in 3 with a partner.

c > Communication Where are they from?  
A p.100 B p.106.

d Ask people in the class *Where are you from?*

### 5 VOCABULARY numbers 21-100

a Look at the signs. Can you say the numbers?



b > p.148 Vocabulary Bank Days and numbers. Do part 3.

c (1.27) Listen and write the numbers.

d Write ten numbers from 21-100. Dictate them to a partner.

### 6 LISTENING

a (1.28) Listen and repeat the pairs of numbers. What's the difference?

1 a 13 b 30 5 a 17 b 70

2 a 14 b 40 6 a 18 b 80

3 a 15 b 50 7 a 19 b 90

4 a 16 b 60

b (1.29) Which number do you hear? Listen and circle a or b above.

c Play *Bingo*.

### 7 (1.30) SONG All Over the World

# 1C Open your books, please

## 1 VOCABULARY

classroom language

- a Look at the picture of a classroom. Match the words and pictures.

- board /bɔːd/
- chair /tʃeə/
- computer /kəm'pjʊ:tə/
- desk /desk/
- door /dɔː/
- picture /'pɪktʃə/
- 8 table /'teɪbl/
- wall /wɔːl/
- window /'wɪndəʊ/

- b 1.31 Listen and check.  
 c p.150 Vocabulary Bank Classroom language.  
 d 1.34 Listen and follow the instructions.



## 2 PRONUNCIATION

/əʊ/, /uː/, /ɑː/; the alphabet

- a 1.35 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	phone	close	mobile
	boot	school	do
	car	class	answer

- b 1.36 Look at these common abbreviations. Can you say any of them in English? Listen and check.

OK **BBC** MTV  
**CNN** USB **DVD**  
 BMW **ATM**

- c 1.37 Complete the alphabet chart with B, C, D, K, M, N, O, S, T, U, V, W. Listen and check.

train	tree	egg	bike	phone	boot	car
A	—	F	I	—	Q	R
H	—	L	Y	—	—	—
J	—	—	—	—	—	—
—	E	—	—	—	—	—
—	G	—	—	—	—	—
—	P	X	—	—	—	—
—	—	Z	—	—	—	—

- d 1.38 Listen and circle the letter you hear.

1 EAI 2 GJ 3 KQ 4 CS  
 5 VPB 6 MN 7 VW 8 UY

- e Practise saying the phrases below with abbreviations.

a Personal Computer a Very Important Person  
 the United Kingdom the United States of America  
 the European Union a Portable Document Format  
 a Disc Jockey the National Basketball Association



### 3 LISTENING & SPEAKING

- a (139) A student goes to London to study English. Listen to the interview and complete her form.

First name	D _____
Surname	B _____ rr _____
Country	_____
City	_____
Age	_____
Address	Avenida Princesa Isabel
Postcode	_____
Email	dbezerra@mail.com
Phone number	55 _____
Mobile phone	_____

- b (140) Listen. Complete the receptionist's questions.

- 1 What's your \_\_\_\_\_ name?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ your surname?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ do you spell it?
- 4 Where are you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ old are you?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ your address?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ your postcode?
- 8 What's your \_\_\_\_\_ address?
- 9 What's your \_\_\_\_\_?

- c Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.
- d Ask your partner the questions. Write down their answers.

**Spelling: names and addresses**  
RR = double R @ = at . = dot

### 4 GRAMMAR possessive adjectives: *my, your, etc.*

- a Complete the gaps with *I, you, my, or your*.

- 1 Where are \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
\_\_\_\_\_ 'm from Rio.
- 2 What's \_\_\_\_\_ name?  
\_\_\_\_\_ name's Darly.

- b ► p.124 Grammar Bank 1C. Learn more about possessive adjectives and practise them.

- c (142) Listen. Change the sentences.

))) I'm Richard. ( My name's Richard.

### 5 SPEAKING

► **Communication** What's his / her real name? A p.100 B p.106. Find out if some actors' and singers' names are their real names or not.

### 6 WRITING

► p.111 **Writing** *Completing a form.* Complete an application for a student visa and write a paragraph about you.



# Practical English Arriving in London



## 1 VOCABULARY in a hotel

a Match the words and symbols.



- Reception /rɪ'sepʃn/
- the lift /lɪft/
- a single room /'sɪŋɡl rɒm/
- a double room /'dʌbl rɒm/
- the bar /bɑː/
- the ground floor (graʊnd) flɔː/ (first, second, third, etc.)

b (1:43) Listen and check.

## 2 INTRODUCTION

a (1:44) Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

- 1 Rob lives and works in London.
- 2 He's a writer for a magazine.
- 3 The name of his magazine is *London 20seven*.
- 4 Jenny is British.
- 5 She's an assistant editor.
- 6 It's her second time in the UK.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

## 3 CHECKING IN

a (1:45) Watch or listen to Jenny checking into a hotel room. Answer the questions.

- 1 Complete Jenny's surname: ZI\_\_LI\_\_SK\_\_.
- 2 What's her room number?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Good evening, madam.	Hello. I have a reservation. My name's Jennifer Zielinski.
Can you _____ that, please?	Z-I-E-L-I-N-S-K-I.
For five nights?	Yes, that's right.
Can I have your passport, please?	Just a second...Here you are.
Thank you. Can you sign here, _____? Thank you.	
Here's your _____.	
It's room 306, on the third floor.	
The _____ is over there.	The lift? Oh, the elevator.
Yes. Enjoy your stay, Ms Zielinski.	Thank you.

### British and American English

lift = British English elevator = American English  
z = /zed/ in British English, /zi:/ in American English

### Greetings

Good morning = > 12.00 Good afternoon = 12.00 > 18.00  
Good evening = 18.00 > Good night = Goodbye (when you go to bed)  
Madam = a polite way to greet a woman  
Sir = a polite way to greet a man

c (1:46) Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.







## 4 JENNY TALKS TO ROB

a (1:48) Watch or listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

- 1 Jenny has a coffee.
- 2 She is in London on business.
- 3 The waitress is German.
- 4 Jenny phones Rob Walker.
- 5 Jenny is tired.
- 6 Their meeting is at 10.00.



- d Practise the dialogue with a partner.
- e Work in pairs. Read your role and look at the dialogue in 3b. What do you need to change?
- A (book open) You are the receptionist. It's 11.00 a.m. B's room is 207 on the second floor. Begin with *Good morning sir/madam*.
- B (book closed) You arrive at the hotel. Use your name and surname.
- f  Roleplay the dialogue. Then swap roles.
- g (1:47) Look at the information in the box. Listen and repeat the *Can...?* phrases.

 **Can you...?** = Please do it

*Can you sign here?*  
*Can you spell that?*

**Can I have...?** = Please give me (your passport, etc.)


*Can I have your passport, please?*  
*Can I have my key, please?*

- h You are in a hotel. How do you ask the receptionist to give you...?
- your key
  - your passport
  - a map of London
  - a pen



b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

c (1:49) Read the information in the box. Listen and repeat the *Would you like...?* phrases and the responses. Practise offering drinks and responding.

 **Would you like...?**

<i>Would you like a coffee?</i>	<i>Yes, please.</i>
<i>Would you like another tea?</i>	<i>No, thanks.</i>

We use *Would you like...?* to offer somebody something.  
We respond *Yes, please* or *No, thanks*.

d Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or the waitress?

**Social English phrases**

<i>I'm here [on business].</i>	<i>This is [Rob. Rob Walker].</i>
<i>I'm from [New York]. What about you?</i>	<i>That's perfect.</i>
<i>No problem.</i>	<i>It's time for bed.</i>
<i>Is that [Jennifer]?</i>	

e (1:50) Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

f Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

 **Can you...?**

- check into a hotel and spell your name
- ask somebody to do something / to give you something
- offer somebody a drink, and accept or refuse

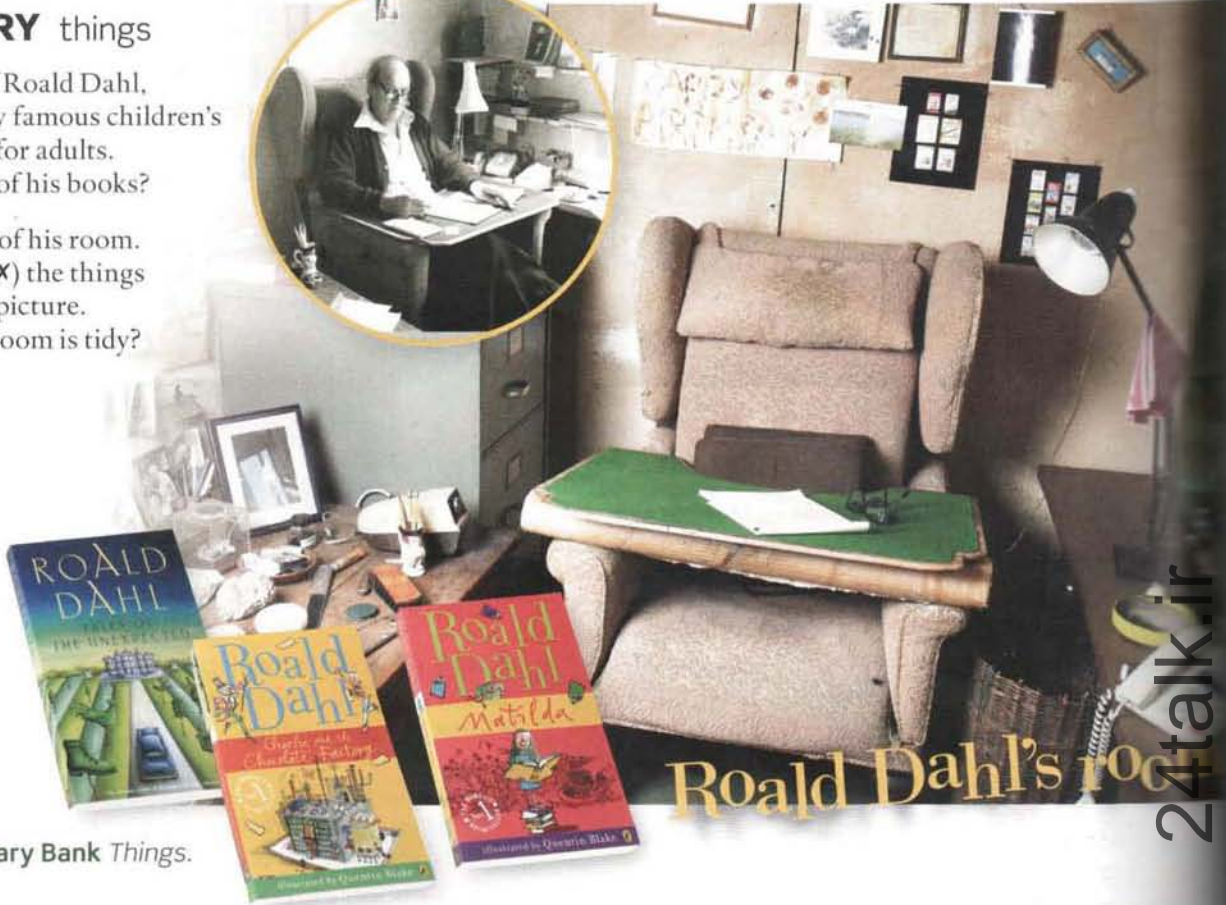


# 2A A writer's room

## 1 VOCABULARY things

- a Look at a photo of Roald Dahl, the author of many famous children's books and stories for adults. Do you know any of his books?
- b Look at the photo of his room. Tick (✓) or cross (X) the things you can see in the picture. Do you think the room is tidy?

- a table
- a lamp
- a computer
- a chair
- pencils
- photos
- a window
- a printer
- a phone
- pieces of paper









Roald Dahl's room

c ➤ p.151 Vocabulary Bank Things.

## 2 GRAMMAR a / an, plurals



a Complete the chart.

Singular	Plural
 a pen	 pens
 _____ umbrella	 _____
 _____	 watches
 _____	 diaries

b ➤ p.126 Grammar Bank 2A part 1.  
 Learn more about a / an and plurals, and practise them.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION final -s and -es

a (1/53) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	snake	books	lamps	tickets
	zebra	photos	keys	pens
/ɪz/		glasses	watches	purses

b (1/54) Read the rule. Circle the words where -es is pronounced /ɪz/. Listen and check.

**Final -es**  
 Final -es after ce, ch, sh, s, ge, and x = /ɪz/, e.g. watches, glasses, purses

- 1 classes    3 headphones    5 pieces    7 pages
- 2 files    4 boxes    6 tissues    8 mobiles



## 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

- a ► **Communication** *What's on the table? p.100.*
- b 155)) Listen to three people say what things they have on the table or desk where they work. Are their tables tidy?
- c Listen again and tick (✓) the things they have.

	1	2	3
a computer / a laptop	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
a printer	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
a lamp	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
a phone	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
books	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
a dictionary	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
a diary	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
photos	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
pieces of paper	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
pens	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
DVDs	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
tissues	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- d Talk to a partner about the table where you work or study. Say what things you have. Say if the table is tidy or not.

*I have a laptop and a printer. I have... It isn't tidy.*

- e Play *What is it?* with your partner. A close your eyes. B give things to your partner and ask *What is it? What are they?*



## 5 GRAMMAR

*this / that / these / those*

- a 156)) Look at pictures 1–4 and complete the dialogues. Listen and check. Practise the dialogues.
- b Read the dialogues again. What's the difference between...?
- this* and *these*
  - this* and *that*
  - these* and *those*
- c ► p.126 Grammar Bank 2A part 2. Learn more about *this / that / these / those* and practise them.

## 6 PRONUNCIATION *th*

- a 158)) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	mother	this that these the they
	thumb	thanks thing thirty three Thursday

- b 159)) Listen and repeat the phrases. Practise saying them.

- this Thursday
- thirty-three
- those things
- Thanks for that.
- These are the keys.
- What are those things there?
- I'm thirty-three this Thursday.

- c Work in pairs. Put four of your things on your table (singular or plural). Ask your partner.



For the things on your table:

*What's this in English?* *It's a watch.*

For things in the classroom (point):

*What are those in English?* *They're pictures.*



- 1 What's this?  
It's \_\_\_\_\_.



- 2 What are these?  
They're \_\_\_\_\_.



- 3 What's that?  
It's \_\_\_\_\_.



- 4 What are those?  
They're \_\_\_\_\_.



Is she attractive?

Yes. She's very tall, with red hair.

# 2B Stars and Stripes

## 1 VOCABULARY colours, adjectives part 1

a What colour is the American flag? Write the missing letters.



It's r\_d, wh\_t, and bl\_.

b Complete the other colours.

bl\_ck y\_ll w\_gr\_y p\_nk  
 \_r\_ng br\_wn gr\_n

c Practise with the flags. Ask and answer.



What colour is it?

d What colour is *your* flag?

e ► p.152 Vocabulary Bank Adjectives. Do part 1.

## 2 GRAMMAR adjectives

a What are they? Label the pictures in the USA quiz using an adjective and a noun from each circle.

### Adjectives

nice yellow  
 American New  
 fast White  
 blue high

### Nouns

food House  
 school Airlines  
 taxis jeans  
 day York

b (1 62) Listen and check. Circle the correct rule.

- Adjectives go *before* / *after* a noun.
- Adjectives *change* / *don't change* before a plural noun.

c ► p.126 Grammar Bank 2B. Learn more about adjectives and practise them.

d Cover the pictures. Can you remember the eight phrases?



1 American Airlines



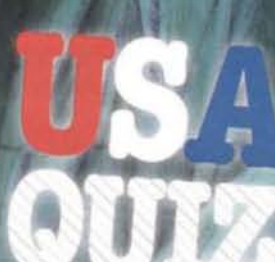
2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 Have a \_\_\_\_\_!



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 The \_\_\_\_\_



5 The \_\_\_\_\_



6 a \_\_\_\_\_



7 \_\_\_\_\_



8 \_\_\_\_\_



### 3 PRONUNCIATION









long and short vowel sounds



#### Long and short vowels

Vowel sounds in English are long or short. Long sounds have /: / in the phonetic symbol, e.g. /a: /.

- a 164 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 fish	 tree	 cat	 car
 clock	 horse	 bull	 boot

- b Match an adjective from circle A with an adjective from circle B with the same vowel sound. Write them in the chart.

A

blue full  
easy rich  
black fast  
small hot

B

cheap big  
new good  
short wrong  
bad far

- c 165 Listen and check.

- d p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the typical spellings for these sounds.

- e **Adjective race** In pairs, in three minutes make phrases with an adjective and a noun with the same vowel sound. Use *a / an* with singular nouns.

#### Adjectives

old new  
grey fast  
black good  
big cheap  
short

#### Nouns

book boots  
cars cat  
day fish  
jeans photo  
story

An old photo

- f 166 Listen and check. Practise saying the phrases.

### 4 VOCABULARY adjectives part 2

- a p.152 Vocabulary Bank Adjectives. Do part 2.  
b Work in pairs. A say an adjective. B say a famous person.

short } Tom Cruise

### 5 READING

- a Read the descriptions and look at the photos. Who are the two people?

## HOLLYWOOD STARS

### Who are they?

He's a **famous** American actor. He's quite tall and he's very attractive. He **has** long **hair** and brown **eyes**. I think he's **about** 50.

She's a very beautiful actress. She's quite short and slim, **and** she has long dark hair. She's a Hollywood star, **but** she isn't American, she's Spanish.

- b Read them again. Guess the meaning of the **highlighted** words.

### 6 WRITING & SPEAKING

- a Think of a famous person from any country in the world. Use the jobs in the box to help you.

actor / actress musician politician  
singer sportsman / sportswoman TV presenter

- b Write a short description of the person. Give it to your partner. Can he / she guess who it is?

- c Play *Guess the famous person*.

A think of a famous actor / actress.

B ask ten questions using *Is...?* Try to guess the actor / actress.

Is it a man or a woman? } A woman.

Is she American? } Yes, she is.



# 2C After 300 metres, turn right

## 1 VOCABULARY feelings

a Match the words and pictures.



- |                                 |                                  |                                   |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> hungry | <input type="checkbox"/> sad     | <input type="checkbox"/> bored    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> hot    | <input type="checkbox"/> thirsty | <input type="checkbox"/> happy    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> angry  | <input type="checkbox"/> cold    | <input type="checkbox"/> stressed |
| <input type="checkbox"/> tired  | <input type="checkbox"/> worried |                                   |

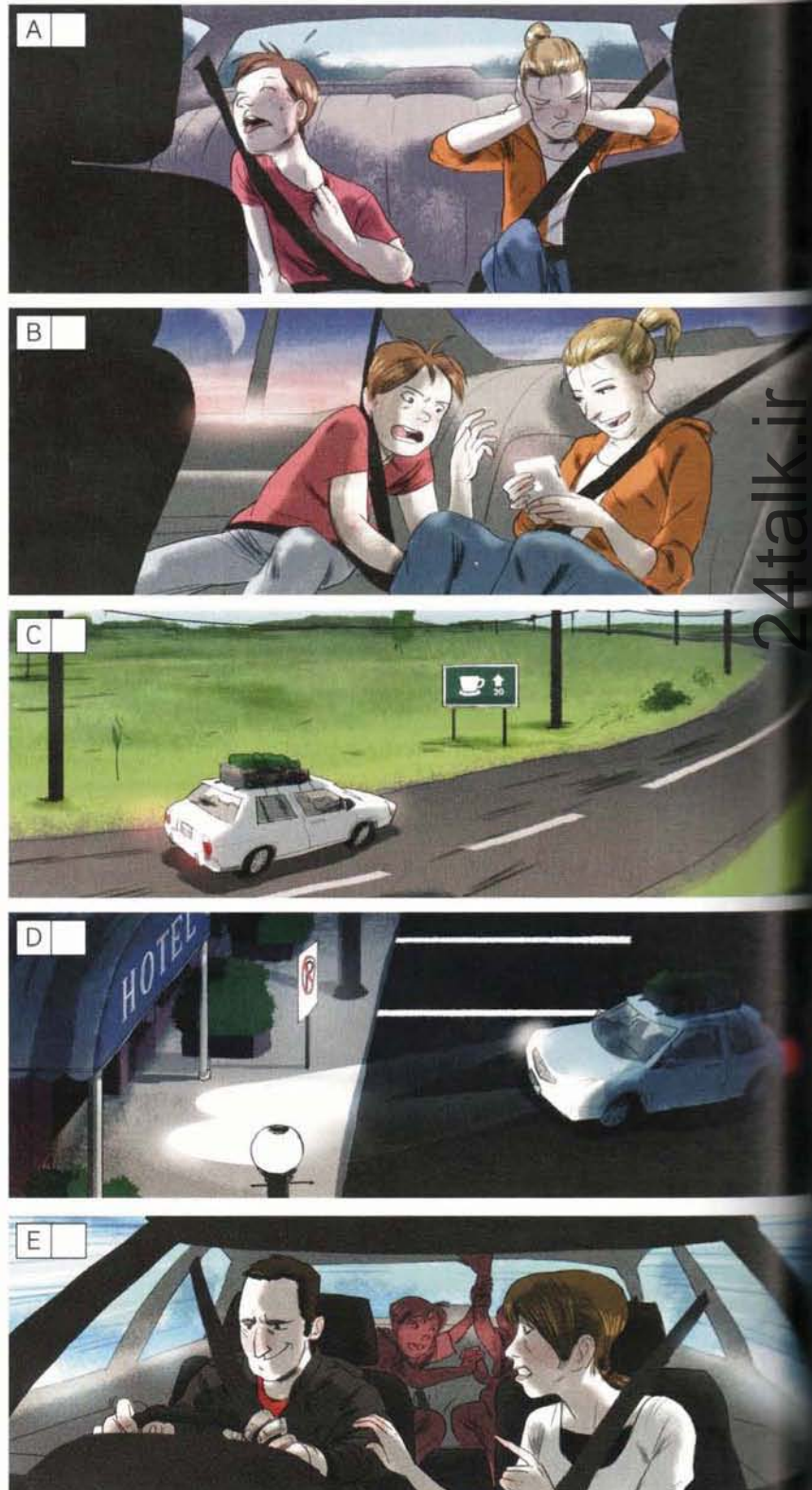
**Collocation**  
 Use *be + hungry, thirsty, hot, etc.*,  
 e.g. *I'm very hungry.*  
 NOT *I have very hungry.*

- b (1.68) Listen and check. Repeat the phrases.
- c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Make  and  sentences about how you feel and tell your partner.

*I'm quite hungry.*  
*I'm very tired.*  
*I'm not hot.*

## 2 LISTENING & READING

a (1.69) The Carter family are on holiday in Ireland. Look at the pictures. Listen and number them 1–5.





b Listen again and read. Try to guess what the highlighted phrases mean.

1 **Satnav** After 100 metres **turn right**.  
Turn right.  
**Mum** Please **slow down!** This road is very dangerous.  
**Dad** **Don't worry.** You know I'm a good driver.  
**Mum** **Be careful!**

2 **Suzy** Dad, this music is terrible. Can you turn it off?  
**Dad** OK.  
**Tim** Dad, I'm very hot. **Turn the air conditioning on,** please.  
**Dad** Are you hot, Suzy?  
**Suzy** No, I'm cold.  
**Mum** **Open your window,** Tim.

3 **Suzy** I'm thirsty. Where's the water?  
**Mum** Here you are.  
**Tim** I'm hungry. Can we stop soon?  
**Mum** **Let's stop at that service station.**  
**Dad** OK.

4 **Tim** Give me my iPod.  
**Suzy** This is my iPod!  
**Dad** **Be quiet!**  
**Tim** Are we there yet? I'm bored.  
**Dad** It's not far now. Only 80 kilometres.  
**Tim** Can you turn the radio on please, Mum?  
**Mum** OK.  
**Dad** Oh no!

5 **Suzy** Where are we?  
**Dad** We're here. At the hotel.  
**Tim** Great!  
**Mum** **Don't park here.** Look at that sign. No parking.  
**Dad** Don't worry. It's OK. **Come on.** Let's go.

c (170) Listen to the end of the story. What are the two problems the family have?



### 3 GRAMMAR imperatives, let's

a Look at the highlighted phrases in 2b. Then complete the chart.

Imperatives		
+	Turn right!	_____ here!
-	_____ right!	Don't park here!
Suggestions		
_____ stop at that service station.		
Come on. Let's _____.		

b ► p.126 Grammar Bank 2C. Learn more about imperatives and let's, and practise them.

c Look at the pictures in 2 and cover the dialogues. Can you remember the imperatives and suggestions with each picture?

d What do the signs mean? Use a verb phrase from the list in a  or  imperative.

be careful	cross the road now	go in here
smoke here	listen to music here	take photos
turn-left	turn off your mobile	eat or drink here



e Cover the list and look at the pictures. Can you remember the phrases?

### 4 PRONUNCIATION

understanding connected speech

#### Connected speech

When people speak they don't usually separate all the words. For example, if a word ends with a consonant and the next word begins with a vowel, they join them together, e.g. Turn\_off the music.

a (172) Listen and write six sentences.

b Practise saying the sentences.

### 5 SPEAKING

► Communication What's the matter? A p.101 B p.106. Roleplay dialogues.

6 (173) SONG Please Don't Go

# 1&2 Revise and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

- Hello. \_\_\_\_\_ your name?  
a What b What are c What's
- Maria is German. \_\_\_\_\_ a student.  
a She's b He's c It's
- A** Where \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
**B** He's from Turkey.  
a he is b is c is he
- They \_\_\_\_\_ English, they're Scottish.  
a isn't b aren't c not are
- A** Are you from Paris?  
**B** Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a I am b I'm c I are
- She's Brazilian. \_\_\_\_\_ name's Daniela.  
a His b Her c Your
- We're from the USA. \_\_\_\_\_ surname is Mackay.  
a Your b Their c Our
- A** What are they?  
**B** They're \_\_\_\_\_.  
a watches b a watch c watches
- A** What is it?  
**B** It's \_\_\_\_\_.  
a a umbrella  
b an umbrella  
c umbrella
- Look at those \_\_\_\_\_.  
a womans b women c womens
- A** What are \_\_\_\_\_ in English?  
**B** They're keys.  
a that b this c these
- These are very \_\_\_\_\_.  
a difficult exercises  
b exercises difficult  
c difficults exercises
- \_\_\_\_\_ careful! That dog's dangerous.  
a Are b Be you c Be
- Please \_\_\_\_\_ in the library.  
a not eat b don't eat c no eat
- I'm hungry. \_\_\_\_\_ stop at the café.  
a Let's b We c Don't

## VOCABULARY

a Complete with *at, from, in, off, or to*.

- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ Japan.
- Nice \_\_\_\_\_ meet you.
- What's *bonjour* \_\_\_\_\_ English?
- Look \_\_\_\_\_ the board.
- Please turn \_\_\_\_\_ your mobile phone.

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

Answer Stand Open Read Work

- \_\_\_\_\_ the text.
- \_\_\_\_\_ in pairs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ up.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the questions.

c Circle the word that is different.





one	three	<b>book</b>	five
1 eight	two	seven	file
2 Brazil	Chinese	Hungary	Switzerland
3 Polish	Italian	Japanese	France
4 Africa	Asia	Ireland	Europe
5 sixteen	forty	ninety	eighty
6 Wednesday	Italy	Friday	Monday
7 glasses	purse	headphones	scissors
8 door	window	wall	school
9 wallet	newspaper	book	magazine
10 happy	tired	angry	stressed

d Write the opposite adjective.

- good \_\_\_\_\_ 4 tall \_\_\_\_\_
- expensive \_\_\_\_\_ 5 empty \_\_\_\_\_
- dirty \_\_\_\_\_

## PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

-  A B C D
-  Hi day my nice
- /ɪz/ watches boxes files glasses
-  Japan German good page
-  dangerous stamps bad laptop

b Underline the stressed syllable.

- a|ddress 2 I|taly 3 ex|pen|sive 4 news|pa|per 5 thir|t



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

- a Read the article once. Do you know any more words which are American English, not British English?

### British & American English –

## the same, but different

British and American people speak the same language – English, but with some small differences.

### VOCABULARY

Some words are different in American English, for example Americans say *zip code*, not *postcode*, *vacation*, not *holiday*, and *cell phone*, not *mobile phone*. Some words have different meanings, for example in British English a *purse* is a thing where women have their money and credit cards. In American English a *purse* is a woman's bag.

### SPELLING

*Colour*, *favour*, and other words that end in *-our* in British English end with *-or* in American English, e.g. *color*, *favor*. *Centre*, *theatre*, and other words that end in *-tre* in British English end with *-ter* in American English, e.g. *center*, *theater*.

### GRAMMAR

American grammar is very similar to British grammar, but with some small differences, especially prepositions. For example, Americans say *See you Friday*, but British people say *See you on Friday*.

### PRONUNCIATION

The most important difference between American and British English is pronunciation. American accents and British accents are quite different, and when an American starts speaking British people know he or she is American, and *vice versa*.

- b Look at the highlighted words in the text and guess their meaning.

- c Read the article again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

- 1 American English and British English are very different.
- 2 *Holiday* and *postcode* are the same in British and American English.
- 3 *Purse* has different meanings in American and British English.
- 4 *Kilometer* is British spelling.
- 5 British and American grammar are not very different.
- 6 It's difficult to know from their accent if a person is English or American.

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

- 1 74)) In the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.



- 1 Her name is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a Cecilia b Cecil c Cecile
- 2 Andy's from Newcastle in the \_\_\_\_\_ of England.  
a North East b North West c South East
- 3 David is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a Italian b French c Spanish
- 4 Her name is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a Arya b Aria c Arja
- 5 Karin is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a Swiss b Brazilian c Hungarian

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✓) the box if you can do them.

### Can you...?

- 1  count from 0–20
- 2  count from 20–100 (20, 30, etc.)
- 3  say the days of the week
- 4  give three instructions: two ⊕ and one ⊖
- 5  introduce yourself and another person
- 6  answer the questions below
  - What's your first name / surname?
  - How do you spell it?
  - Where are you from?

Short films Hollywood, Los Angeles  
Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.



# 3A Things I love about Britain

## 1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

go read work have listen

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper      4 \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio      5 \_\_\_\_\_ in an office  
 3 \_\_\_\_\_ children

b ► p.153 Vocabulary Bank Verb phrases.

c (2/3) Listen. Say the phrase. )))TV watch TV

## 2 GRAMMAR present simple ⊕ and ⊖

a Look at four things people say about Britain and the British. Do you think they are true or not true? Then read the text and check your answers.

# THE BRITISH — IS IT TRUE?

British people drink tea at 5.00.

It rains a lot.

British people like animals.

The food in Britain isn't very good.

Four foreigners who live in Britain talk about the things people say about the British...

**British people drink tea at 5.00.** Kati from Hungary

It's true that British people drink a lot of tea (and coffee) but they don't drink tea at a special time. I work for a British company here and my boss drinks tea all the time.

**It rains a lot.** Nicolai from Russia

It rains a lot, but it doesn't rain every day. Be careful because the weather changes quickly. I always take an umbrella when I go out.

**British people like animals.** Norma from Mexico

I have a lot of friends here and they all have a dog or a cat. One family that I know has two dogs and five cats. British people love animals!

**The food in Britain isn't very good.** Hasan from Turkey

The restaurants are quite expensive but they are great, and the food is good in a lot of pubs, too. I share a flat with a Scottish boy, and he cooks every night. He watches all the cooking programmes on TV and he makes great curries!

b Answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 Look at the highlighted verbs. Why do some verbs end in -s?  
 2 Write the *he / she / it* form of these verbs.

change \_\_\_\_\_ have \_\_\_\_\_  
 cook \_\_\_\_\_ go \_\_\_\_\_  
 make \_\_\_\_\_ watch \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Find two negative ⊖ verbs. How are they different from positive ⊕ verbs a) for *he / she / it* b) for all other persons?

c ► p.128 Grammar Bank 3A.

Learn more about present simple ⊕ and ⊖ and practise it.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION third person -s

a How do you pronounce these plural nouns?

books keys watches

b (2/5) Listen and repeat the third person verb forms.

/s/ She speaks Spanish.  
 He drinks coffee.  
 She cooks every day.

/z/ It rains a lot.  
 He has a cat.  
 She does exercise.  
 He goes to the cinema on Friday night.

/ɪz/ He watches TV.  
 The film finishes in a minute.  
 The weather changes a lot.

c (2/6) Listen. Change the sentence.

))) I live in a flat. She. ( She lives in a flat.

d Tell your partner six true things about you: three ⊕ and three ⊖. Choose verb phrases from p.153 Vocabulary Bank Verb phrases

( I play the guitar. I don't wear glasses.

e Change partners. Tell your new partner the six things about your old partner.

( Eva plays the guitar. She doesn't wear glasses



# Starbucks, summer, and other things I ♥ love about Britain



1



2



**M**ark Vanhoenacker, an American journalist who lives in London, says the UK's not just OK – it's paradise. **These are some of his reasons...**

## Walking

Britain isn't a good place for cyclists. But for pedestrians it is wonderful. When you walk on a zebra crossing, all the drivers stop.

## Banks

British banks are great – you do everything online, and you don't pay when you take money out of an ATM. And if you want to change banks, the banks do all the work, not you.

## Drivers

The British are very polite when they drive. They don't hoot, and they are patient with other drivers. They always say thank you when you let them pass.



4

## Boots the Chemist

Chemists in the UK are wonderful, friendly shops and completely different from US pharmacies. Boots sells everything you want, not just medicine, and the shop assistants give you good advice.

## No ID Cards

Britain is one of the only places in the world where people don't have ID cards. In the US you need ID when you buy a drink, go to a club, use a credit card, or take an intercity train.

## Summers

I love British summers! A good summer day in Britain is dry and warm, but not very hot.

## Starbucks

Starbucks isn't British, of course, but I prefer the Starbucks in Britain. They are nice, friendly places where people read the newspaper and drink good coffee. And the waiters don't write your name on the cups – I feel stupid in America when the waiter calls 'Mark, your tall cappuccino with extra chocolate!'



5



6

## 4 READING & SPEAKING

2 Look at the photos. In which one can you see...?

- |   |  |                                       |
|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> a cash machine (ATM in American English) | <input type="checkbox"/> a chemist /'kemɪst/   | <input type="checkbox"/> a waiter     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a cup of coffee                          | <input type="checkbox"/> a cyclist /'saɪklɪst/ | <input type="checkbox"/> a pedestrian |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a zebra crossing                         | <input type="checkbox"/> a driver              |                                       |

27) Read and listen to the article. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Say why the F ones are false.

- Britain is a good country for cyclists and pedestrians.
- It's expensive to use ATMs in Britain.
- British drivers are nice to other drivers.
- Boots the Chemist only has medicine.
- In Britain people don't have ID cards.
- Summers in Britain are very hot.
- In Starbucks in Britain waiters don't use your first name.

c Underline these verbs in the text. What do they mean? Compare your ideas with a partner.

walk pay drive sell give need  
buy use prefer feel call

d Look at each paragraph again. Say if it's the same or different in your country or city.

*Naples isn't a good place for cyclists or pedestrians, because people drive very fast!*

**Useful words: Why? and because**  
Use *because* to answer the question *Why?*  
*Why isn't Naples a good place for cyclists?*  
*Because people drive very fast.*



# 3B Work and play

## 1 VOCABULARY jobs

a Order the letters to make words for jobs.

- 1 ACTEHRE T \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 ROCAT A \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 TRIEWA W \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 AXTI RREDIV T \_\_\_\_\_ D \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 PTIREONICEST R \_\_\_\_\_

b ► p.154 Vocabulary Bank Jobs.

c What do you do? Ask five other students in the class.



## His job, her job

## 2 LISTENING

a (2 10, 11)) Listen to a game show called *His job, her job*. A team of three people ask Wayne questions about his job and his wife Tanya's job. Write **W** next to the questions they ask Wayne about his job, and **T** next to the questions they ask about Tanya's job.

b Listen again. What are Wayne's answers? Write ✓ (yes), ✗ (no), or D (it depends) after each question.

c Look at the answers. What do you think his job is? What do you think her job is?

d (2 12)) Listen to the end of the programme. What do Wayne and his wife do?

Where? work outside   
 in the street   
 inside   
 in an office

When? work in the evening   
 at night   
 at the weekend

How? work with computers   
 with other people   
 long hours

have special qualifications   
 speak foreign languages   
 travel   
 drive   
 make things   
 wear a uniform or special clothes   
 earn a lot of money

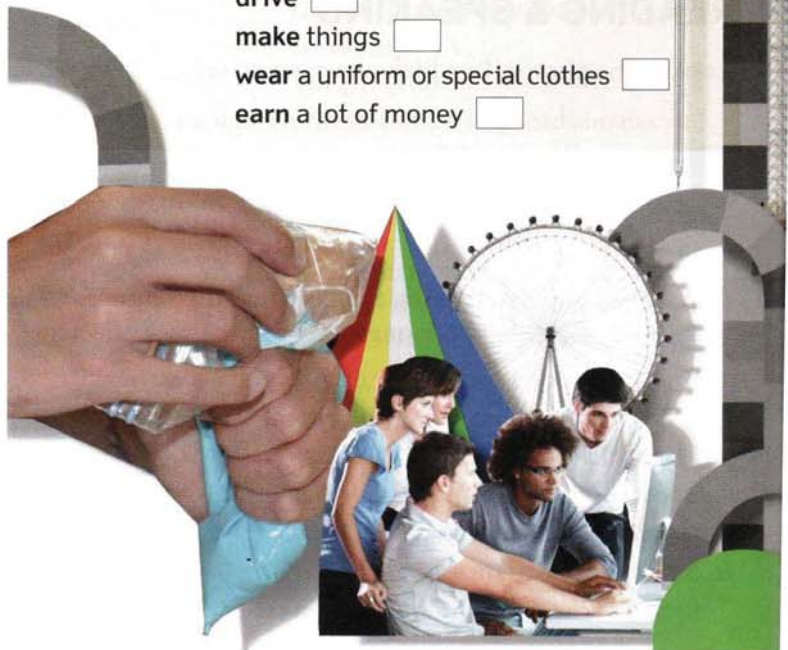
## 3 GRAMMAR present simple ?

a (2 13)) Complete the questions. Listen and check. Why are questions 3 and 4 different?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ you work with other people?  
 Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_ you work in an office?  
 No, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3 \_\_\_\_\_ she work with computers?  
 No, she \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 \_\_\_\_\_ she work at the weekend?  
 Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.

b ► p.128 Grammar Bank 3B. Learn more about present simple ? and practise it.

c In groups of four, play *His job, her job*. Choose jobs from p.154 Vocabulary Bank Jobs. Ask questions to guess the jobs.





#### 4 PRONUNCIATION /ɜ:/

a (2 15)) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.



bird nurse thirty her work journalist



/ɜ:/

ur, ir, and er usually = /ɜ:/ when they are stressed.  
or after w usually = /ɜ:/ e.g. work.

b (2 16)) Listen. Which word *doesn't* have the /ɜ:/ sound?

- 1 thirsty dirty thirteen tired
- 2 earn here prefer service
- 3 Thursday sure turn Turkey
- 4 worry word worker world

c Practise saying the sentences.

*I prefer Turkish coffee.*

*Journalists work all over the world.*

*Shirley is thirty on Thursday.*

#### 5 SPEAKING

a Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

do (x3) eat go listen read use ~~walk~~ watch

##### In the week

walk to work / school

\_\_\_\_\_ a computer at work / school

\_\_\_\_\_ in English

\_\_\_\_\_ in a café or restaurant

\_\_\_\_\_ housework

##### At the weekend

\_\_\_\_\_ TV in the morning

\_\_\_\_\_ to music

\_\_\_\_\_ sport or exercise

\_\_\_\_\_ homework

\_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions, then change roles.

**A** Ask **B** the questions.

**B** Answer the questions. Give more information if you can.

**A** Do you walk to school? **B** No, I don't. I go by bus.

c Change pairs. Ask your new partner about his / her old partner.

**C** Does Akito walk to school? **A** No, he doesn't. He goes by bus.

#### 6 READING

a Read the article. Match each text to a photo. What do the three people do?

# UNIFORMS

## - FOR OR AGAINST?



JON



MARIE



SARAH

### Three people say what they think...

- 1 Our uniform is OK. I like the colours, grey and red. The only things I don't like are the **tie**, because it's difficult to put on, and the **skirt**, because I prefer trousers. I think uniforms are a good idea. Everybody looks the same, and it's easy to **get dressed** in the morning – I don't need to think about what to wear.
- 2 Our uniform is dark **trousers** and a white **nylon top**, a bit like a nurse's uniform. We can't wear anything over the uniform, so it's quite cold in the winter, and it gets dirty very easily because it's white. I'm not against uniforms, but my uniform just isn't practical!
- 3 Our uniform is very simple – a dark blue **jacket** and trousers and a white **shirt and tie**. I like it, it's nice and **comfortable**, so I'm happy to wear it. And I think it's important that people can see where we are when they need help.

b With a partner, say what the **highlighted** words mean. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

c Read the article again. Who...?

- 1 thinks uniforms are a good idea, but doesn't like his / her uniform?
- 2 likes his / her uniform, but doesn't say anything about uniforms in general?
- 3 thinks uniforms are a good idea and quite likes his / her uniform?

d Do you wear a uniform at work / school? Do you like it? Why (not)? Do you think uniforms are a good idea?



# 3C Love online

## 1 LISTENING

- a Kevin and Samantha want to meet a partner on the internet. Read their profiles and look at their photos. Then cover them and say what you can remember. Do you think they are a good match?

Kevin is 28. He lives in South London...

**Search**

I am a Man

Looking for Women

Age 25 to 35

In London

**Search**



**Kevin**

**Age:** 28  
**Lives in:** South London  
**Likes:** films, music  
**Doesn't like:** football



**Samantha**

**Age:** 26  
**Lives in:** South London  
**Likes:** the cinema, good food  
**Doesn't like:** sport

- d (2.18)) Look at the highlighted phrases in the conversation. Listen and repeat them. Practise the conversation with a partner.



### Showing interest

When you have a conversation, react to what your partner says. Use *Me too. Really? How interesting! What about you?* etc.

- e (2.19)) Listen to the second part of the conversation. Do you think they want to meet again?
- f Listen again and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Say why the F ones are false.
- 1 Samantha likes science fiction films.
  - 2 They like the same kind of music.
  - 3 Their weekends are very different.
  - 4 Samantha pays for their lunch.
- g Do you think the internet is a good place to make friends or meet a partner? Why (not)?

- b (2.17)) Kevin and Samantha meet in a restaurant for lunch. Cover the conversation and listen. What does Kevin say about...?

1 where he lives 2 his job 3 films he likes

- c Listen again. Complete the missing verbs.

- S Hi. Are you Kevin?  
 K Yes. Are you Samantha?  
 S Yes I am, but call me Sam. Nice to \_\_\_\_ you. Sorry I'm late.  
 K No problem. You look different from your photo.  
 S Let's \_\_\_\_ a drink. A beer? Wine?  
 K No, thanks. Water for me. I don't \_\_\_\_ alcohol at lunchtime.
- K I \_\_\_\_ this place.  
 S Me too. Where do you \_\_\_\_ in South London?  
 K In Bromley. Near the market. I \_\_\_\_ with my mother.  
 S Really? What do you \_\_\_\_?  
 K I'm a teacher. I teach chemistry.  
 S Chemistry? How interesting.  
 K Yes, it's a very interesting job. What about you?  
 S I'm a journalist. You \_\_\_\_ the cinema, Kevin.  
 What kind of films do you \_\_\_\_?  
 K Science-fiction films. I \_\_\_\_ *Star Wars*.  
 S Oh.  
 K Do you \_\_\_\_ *Star Wars*?





## 2 GRAMMAR word order in questions

a Cover the conversation. Put the words in order to make the questions.

- 1 I want you do drink a \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 in South live London you do where \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 films like kind you of what do \_\_\_\_\_?

b ▶ p.128 Grammar Bank 3C. Learn more about word order in questions and practise it.

## 3 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

question words; sentence stress

a (221) Listen and repeat the question words and phrases. How is *Wh-* pronounced in *Who*? How is it pronounced in the other question words?

How? How many? **What?** What kind?  
When? Where? Which? Who? Why?

b Complete the questions with a question word or phrase from the list in a.

- 1 What phone do you have?  
I have an iPhone.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ old are you?  
22.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ brothers and sisters do you have?  
I have two sisters.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ do you prefer, Saturdays or Sundays?  
Saturdays.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ do you have English classes?  
On Mondays and Wednesdays.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ of films do you like?  
I like old British films.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ do you live?  
In the city centre.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_'s your favourite actor?  
Colin Firth.
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ do you like him?  
Because he's very good-looking!

c (222) Listen and check.

d Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

What phone do you have?

e Work in pairs. A ask B the questions. B give your own answers. Then change roles.

## 4 SPEAKING



a Imagine you meet a new friend online, and you go out for coffee together. Look at the prompts and write eight questions.

*Where do you work?*

*Who is your favourite singer?*

**Where**

**What** sports  
magazines  
TV programmes  
languages  
car

**What kind of** music  
films  
food

work  
like  
watch  
read  
do  
speak  
study  
play  
have



**Who**  
**What**

your favourite

TV programme  
restaurant  
singer  
actor



b Work in pairs with a student you don't know very well.

A Ask B your first question.

B Answer the question. Give more information if you can.

A React to B's answer.

B Ask A your first question.

A *What kind of music do you like?*

B *I like classical music, especially Mozart.*

A *Really? Me too.*

## 5 WRITING

▶ p.111 Writing A personal profile. Write a profile of yourself.

6 (223) SONG *Somethin' Stupid* 🎵

# Practical English Coffee to take away

## 1 TELLING THE TIME

a Look at the clock. What time is it?



► p. 157 Vocabulary Bank *Time*. Do Part 1.

b Communication *What's the time?* A p.101 B p.107.

## 2 ROB AND JENNY MEET

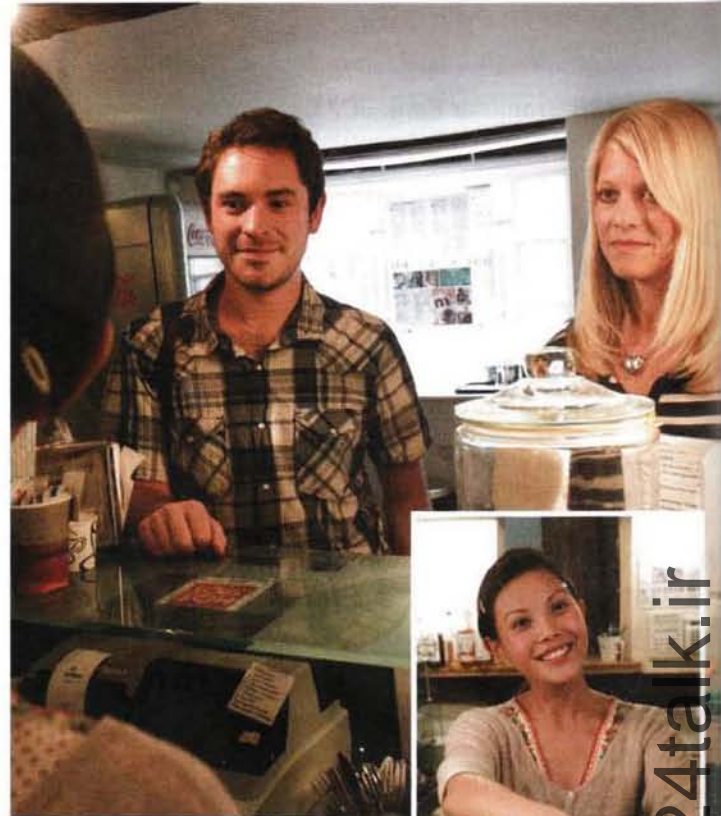
a (2:25) Watch or listen to what happens when Rob and Jenny meet. What do they decide to do?

b Watch or listen again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Say why the F sentences are false.

- 1 Jenny's full name is Jennifer.
- 2 Rob is early.
- 3 Jenny likes the hotel.
- 4 She doesn't like the hotel coffee.
- 5 She has a meeting with Daniel at 9.15.
- 6 The office isn't very far from the hotel.



## 3 BUYING A COFFEE



a Look at the coffee shop menu. Do you know what all the things are?

### menu

#### drinks and cakes

<b>Espresso</b>		single <b>2.45</b>	double <b>2.80</b>
<b>Americano</b>		regular <b>3.15</b>	large <b>3.95</b>
<b>Latte</b>		regular <b>3.45</b>	large <b>3.65</b>
<b>Cappuccino</b>		regular <b>3.45</b>	large <b>3.65</b>
<b>Tea</b>		regular <b>2.65</b>	large <b>3.10</b>
<b>Brownie</b>		<b>3.00</b>	
<b>Croissant</b>		<b>3.00</b>	



b (2.26) Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny buying coffee. Answer the questions.

- 1 What kind of coffee do Rob and Jenny have?
- 2 What do they have to eat?
- 3 How much is it?

c Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Can I _____ you?	What would you like, Jenny? An espresso, please.
_____ or double?	Double. Can I have a latte, please?
_____ or large?	Large.
To have _____ or take away?	To take away.
Anything else?	No, thanks. A brownie for me, please... and a croissant.
OK.	How much is that?
That's £12.45, please.	Sorry, how much?
£12.45. Thank you. And your _____.	Thanks.

### Cultural note

barista = a person who works in a coffee shop

d (2.27) Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

e In threes, practise the dialogue.

f Roleplay the dialogue in groups of three. Then swap roles.

A (book open) You are the barista.

B (book closed) You invite C (book closed) to have a drink.

A begins: *Can I help you?*

B asks C: *What would you like?*

## 4 FIRST DAY IN THE OFFICE

a (2.28) Watch or listen and answer the questions.

- 1 What's Karen's job?
- 2 Where in Europe does Jenny have family?
- 3 Where does she live in New York?
- 4 Does Karen have family in New York?
- 5 What does Daniel offer Jenny to drink?
- 6 What time is his next meeting?



b Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: Rob, Karen, or Daniel?

### Social English phrases

Here we are.

Talk to you later.

Is this your first time in [the UK]?

Would you like something to drink?

c (2.29) Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

d Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.



### Can you...?

- tell the time
- order food and drink in a café
- meet and introduce people



# 4A Is she his wife or his sister?

## Who are they with?

### You know the celebrity - but who is the other person?

#### 1 GRAMMAR Whose...?, possessive 's

a How interested are people in your country in the private lives of celebrities? What kind of celebrities? Number the people 1-3 (3 = very interested, 2 = quite interested, 1 = not very interested).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> actors            | <input type="checkbox"/> royalty               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> musicians         | <input type="checkbox"/> TV stars / presenters |
| <input type="checkbox"/> sports players    | <input type="checkbox"/> politicians           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> others (say what) |  |

b Look at the celebrities in the photos. In pairs, answer the questions for each celebrity.

- 1 What does he / she do? Where is he / she from?
- 2 Do you know anything about his / her family or private life?
- 3 Are you interested in these people? Why (not)?

c With a partner, guess who the other person in each photo is. Choose **a** or **b** in sentences 1-5.

d (2/30)) Listen and check. What does 's mean in sentences 1-5?

e ► p.130 Grammar Bank 4A. Learn more about Whose...? and possessive 's and practise them.

f Look at some things from the photos. Whose are they?

Whose is the wristband? It's George Clooney's.



- 1 She's Justin Bieber's  
 a sister b mother
- 2 He's Carla Bruni's  
 a ex-boyfriend b ex-husband
- 3 She's Lionel Messi's  
 a wife b sister
- 4 She's Jack Nicholson's  
 a daughter b girlfriend
- 5 He's George Clooney's  
 a brother b father



#### 2 VOCABULARY family

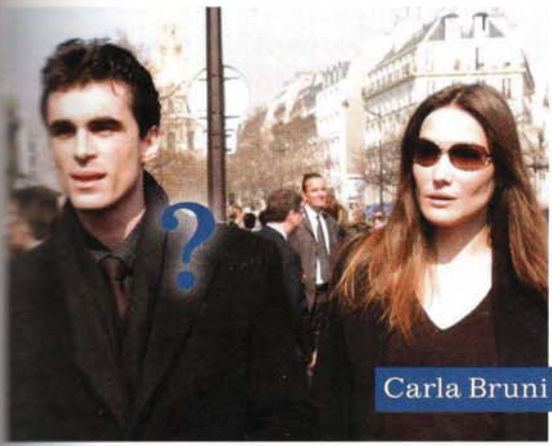
a ► p.155 Vocabulary Bank The family.

b In pairs, answer the questions.

Who's...?

- 1 your mother's mother *My grandmother*
- 2 your father's brother \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 your brother's / sister's daughter \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 your aunt's children \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 your husband's / wife's brother \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 your niece's brother \_\_\_\_\_

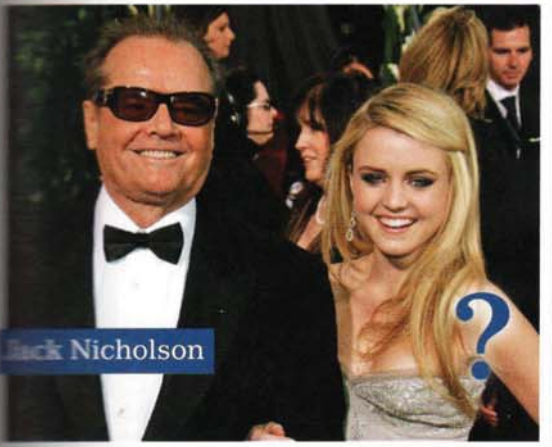




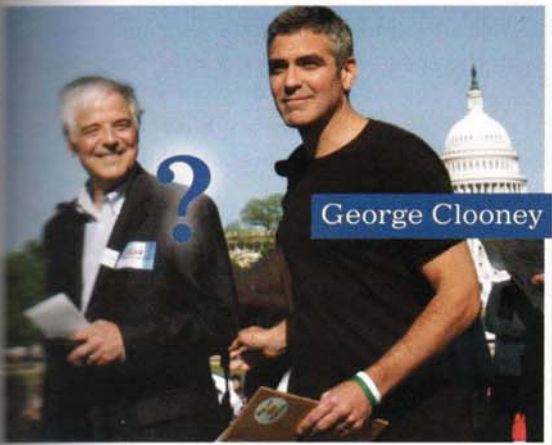
Carla Bruni



Lionel Messi




Jack Nicholson



George Clooney





### 3 PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/, the letter o

a (2 33)) Listen and repeat the words and sound.

 up	mother	brother	son	husband	uncle	cousin
--	--------	---------	-----	---------	-------	--------

- b > p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the different spellings for this sound.
- c How is the letter o pronounced in these words? Put them in the right column.

come do don't doctor go home job London  
model money no one Scotland strong who

 up	 phone	 clock	 boot
come	don't	doctor	do

d (2 34)) Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

e Practise the dialogues with a partner.

- A Who's that?  
B My mother.  
A She's very young!  
B No, she's sixty-one. She's a doctor.
- A Who are they?  
B That's my brother and his son.  
A Do they live in Scotland?  
B No, they don't. They live in London.

### 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a (2 35)) Listen to Isabel showing a friend photos on her phone. Who are the people in the photos in relation to Isabel?

b Listen again. Write down more information about the people in the photos, e.g. their names, ages, jobs, etc.

c Work with a partner.

A Show B some photos of family or friends on your phone or write their names on a piece of paper.

B Ask three questions about each person.

Who's that? } She's my sister Yolanda.

How old is she? }





# 4B What a life!

## 1 VOCABULARY

everyday activities

a (2 36) Listen to the sounds and number the phrases 1–6.

- get dressed
- 1 get up
- have breakfast
- have a shower
- go to work / school
- have a coffee

b What order do you do these things in the morning? Tell your partner.

First I get up, then I...

c p.156 Vocabulary Bank Everyday activities.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

linking and sentence stress

### Connected speech

Remember, when people speak they usually link words together. Sometimes three linked words sound like one word, e.g. I get up at seven.

a (2 38) Listen and write five sentences.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

b (2 39) Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

- I get up at seven.
- I have a shower.
- I go to work.
- I have a sandwich for lunch.
- I get home at six.
- I make the dinner.
- I go to bed at ten.
- What a life!

## 3 READING & LISTENING

a Read the article. How do you think Nico feels at the end of a typical day? Why? Choose from the adjectives in the list.

bored happy stressed sad tired worried relaxed

b Read the article again. Guess the meaning of the highlighted words and phrases. Then underline words and phrases connected with restaurants, e.g. chef.

c Communication Nico's day A p.101 B p.107.

A Ask B questions.

B Find the answers in the text. Then change roles.

What time does Nico get up? He gets up at...



# FATHER & DAUGHTER

– whose day is more stressful?

Nico is a chef and has his own restaurant, the Blue Jar. He lives in Chile with his wife and her three children, aged 16, 12, and 9.

0630 I get up and make breakfast for the children. Then I have breakfast – a coffee and cereal – and I read the sports section of the paper.

0715 I go to the market to buy fruit and vegetables for the restaurant.

0845 When I get to the restaurant I check the reservations and my emails, and plan the special menu of the day. I have my second cup of coffee.

1030 I start cooking. The radio is on, and we are busy with breakfast orders, but we also have to prepare the food for lunch.

1200 I check the tables, and have my third coffee.

1330 Suddenly everyone arrives at the same time and the restaurant is full (on a good day). I start to shout instructions at the chefs and waiters. We make lunch for 85 people in about an hour and a half.

1445 I come into the restaurant and talk to the customers, and ask if they are happy with the food. I'm really hungry now.

1530 Finally I have lunch. I don't enjoy it very much because I don't have time to relax.



- d (240)) Listen to Amelia, Nico's 16-year-old stepdaughter, talking about her day. Complete the gaps with a word, a number, or a time.

**Morning**

6.30 \_\_\_\_\_ She gets up.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ She starts school.  
 She has \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ lessons.

**Afternoon**

\_\_\_\_\_ She has lunch. She only has \_\_\_\_\_ minutes for lunch.  
 She has \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ lessons.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ She finishes school.  
 On Mondays and \_\_\_\_\_ she has extra classes to prepare for the university entrance exam.  
 On Tuesdays and \_\_\_\_\_ she has \_\_\_\_\_ practice.

**Evening**

\_\_\_\_\_ She does \_\_\_\_\_ and studies until dinner.  
 After dinner she studies until \_\_\_\_\_.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ She goes to bed.



- e Look back at the text and the information in d. Whose day do you think is more stressful, Nico's or Amelia's? Why?



1500 After lunch I go back to the kitchen and plan the food for the evening menu.  
 1730 I go home to be with the family for a couple of hours. The children do their homework and I make their dinner.  
 1930 I go back to the restaurant, which is full again, and I check everything is OK.  
 2200 I go home and have a shower. Then I collapse on the sofa with a sandwich and a glass of wine.  
 2300 I go to bed, ready to start again the next day.

**4 GRAMMAR** prepositions of time (*at, in, on*) and place (*at, in, to*)

- a Look at some sentences from Amelia's day. Complete them with *in, on, at, or to*.
- I get up \_\_\_\_\_ half past six.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ the morning we usually have five lessons, sometimes six.
  - We have lunch \_\_\_\_\_ school in the cafeteria.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ Mondays and Wednesdays I go \_\_\_\_\_ extra classes.
- b (241)) Listen and check.
- c ► p.130 Grammar Bank 4B. Learn more about prepositions and practise them.
- d (244)) Listen and say the time phrases with the right preposition.
- ))) the weekend { at the weekend

**5 SPEAKING & WRITING**

- a Work in pairs. Interview your partner about a typical weekday with the questions.
- What time / get up?
  - / have breakfast in the morning? What / have?
  - How / go to work or school?
  - What time / start work or school?
  - / have a long lunch break? How long?
  - What time / finish work or school?
  - What / do after work or school?
  - / relax in the evening? What / do?
  - When / do English homework?
  - What time / go to bed?
  - How / feel at the end of the day?

**When you can't be exact**  
 What time do you get up? At **about** 7.15.  
 What do you have for breakfast? **It depends.**  
 If I have time, I have toast or cereal.

- b Who do you think has a more stressful day, you or your partner? Why?
- c ► p.112 Writing A magazine article. Write about your favourite day.



# 4C Short life, long life?

## 1 VOCABULARY

adverbs and expressions of frequency

a (2.45) Complete the gaps with a 'time' word. Listen and check.

- 1 sixty seconds = a *minute*
- 2 thirty minutes = half an \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 sixty minutes = an \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 twenty-four hours = a \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 seven days = a \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 four weeks = a \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 twelve months = a \_\_\_\_\_

b > p.157 Vocabulary Bank Time. Do parts 2 and 3.

## 2 GRAMMAR

position of adverbs and expressions of frequency

a Read the text about British teenagers. Is it the same in your country?

## Today's teenagers may not live as long as their parents

b Look at the position of the **highlighted** words and expressions. Circle the correct rule.

- 1 Adverbs of frequency (e.g. *usually*) go...  
*before* / *after* a main verb.  
*before* / *after* the verb *be*.
- 2 Expressions of frequency (e.g. *every week*) go...  
*at the beginning* / *at the end* of a phrase or sentence.

c > p.130 Grammar Bank 4C. Learn more about adverbs and expressions of frequency and practise them.

d Make true sentences about you with the verb phrases below and an adverb or expression of frequency. Compare with a partner.

- |                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| be late for work / school | watch the news on TV |
| go to the hairdresser     | check your email     |
| be tired in the morning   | go to the cinema     |
| do housework              | chat online          |

I'm often late for work.

I check my emails five times a day.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION

the letter h

a (2.50) Listen and repeat the words and sound.



house

how hardly healthy high  
 have hungry happy

b (2.51) Listen. Circle the word where h is not pronounced.

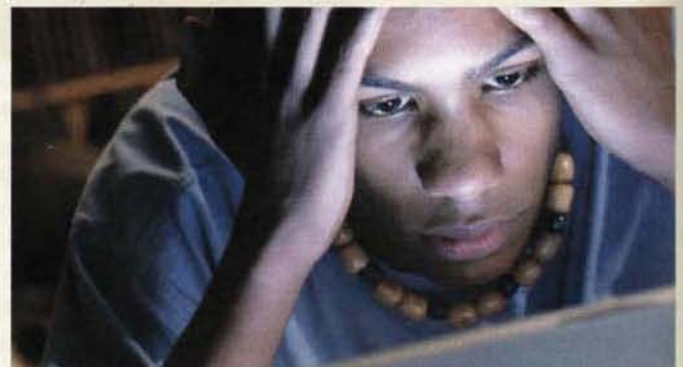
- Harry's a hairdresser.*  
*He hardly ever has breakfast.*  
*He only has half an hour for lunch.*  
*He often has a hamburger for dinner.*  
*Harry isn't very healthy.*

c Practise saying the sentences.

d > p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the typical spellings of this sound.

Doctors are worried that today's teenagers have a very unhealthy lifestyle, and may not live as long as their parents' generation. Research shows:

- 30% of teenagers **never have** breakfast.
- They **eat** fast food at least **two or three times a week** and 75% **hardly ever eat** fruit or green vegetables.
- They **don't usually sleep** 8 hours a day. (30% sleep only 4–7 hours.) They **are often** tired in the morning.
- They **spend** about 31 hours online **every week**. A lot of teenagers **never do** sport or exercise.





## 4 READING & SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. Tick (✓) five things which you think help people to live to be a hundred. Then read the article to check.

- They have a big family.
- They aren't in a hurry.
- They sleep eight hours.
- They have pets.
- They hardly ever eat meat.
- They drink a little alcohol.
- They often go to the doctor.
- They work outside.
- They often see friends.

b Read the article again. In which places are these things important?

- 1 a special kind of water \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 a special kind of food \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 the weather \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 a special kind of drink \_\_\_\_\_

c Underline new words or phrases in the texts and compare with a partner. Try to guess their meaning. Choose two words to learn from each text.

d Look at the five things in a that are in the texts. Are they true for people in your country? Do you think they have a healthy lifestyle?

e ► **Communication** *Short life, long life?*  
p.101 Interview your partner with the questionnaire, then change roles.

5 2 52))) **SONG** *Who Wants to Live Forever* 🎵



# The secrets of a long life

In three areas of the world a very high number of people live to be 100. Scientists want to know why. What do the three places have in common?

## Ecuador

Vilcabamba, a small village in the Andes, is often called 'the Valley of Long Life'. What's its secret? Firstly, Vilcabamba is not very hot or very cold – the temperature is usually between 18 and 27 degrees, and the air is very clean. Secondly, people work hard in the fields, and do a lot of exercise. Thirdly, their diet is very healthy – they eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, and they hardly ever eat meat or fish. The water they drink, from the river in Vilcabamba, is very rich in minerals. They also have a good social life. In Vilcabamba people say, 'The left leg and the right leg help you to be healthy, because they take you to your friends' homes.'

## Italy

In Ogliastra, a mountain region of Sardinia, one out of every 200 people lives to be 100, and they are normally very healthy, too. Most of the people in the villages work outside in their fields and with their animals. They have a healthy diet, with a lot of vegetables and not much meat or fish. They hardly ever take any medicine, but they usually drink a little *grappa* before they go to bed. 'Life is hard,' says Fortunato, who is a shepherd, 'but I am never stressed. I never read the newspaper – because I can't read very well.'

## Japan

People in Okinawa in Japan do not have big meals. They usually just have vegetables and fish, and often eat soya. Okinawans are very active, and they often work until they are 80 or more. But they also relax every day – they see friends and they meditate. Ushi, from Okinawa, is 107. In the evening she often dances with her daughter and has a glass of *sake*. 'I want to have a boyfriend,' she says. When journalists ask people from Okinawa 'What is your secret?' they answer, 'We are happy, we are always positive, and we are never in a hurry.'

**grappa** an Italian alcoholic drink  
**sake** a Japanese alcoholic drink  
**soya** a kind of bean typical in Asia





# 3&4 Revise and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ live near here.  
a not b don't c doesn't
- My sister \_\_\_\_\_ three children.  
a has b have c have's
- \_\_\_\_\_ English?  
a Are they speak  
b Speak they  
c Do they speak
- \_\_\_\_\_ your sister work?  
a Does b Is c Do
- A** Do you work here?  
**B** Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
a work b do c am
- A** What \_\_\_\_\_?  
**B** He's an engineer.  
a he does b does he c does he do
- What languages \_\_\_\_\_?  
a speak you  
b do you speak  
c you speak
- Bill is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a Carla's husband  
b husband's Carla  
c the Carla's husband
- This is my \_\_\_\_\_ house.  
a parent's b parents' c parent
- \_\_\_\_\_ is this book?  
a Who's b Who c Whose
- We usually have lunch \_\_\_\_\_ two o'clock.  
a in b on c at
- What time do you go \_\_\_\_\_ bed?  
a in b to c at
- She \_\_\_\_\_ late for class.  
a never is b is never c never does
- I \_\_\_\_\_ early.  
a usually get up  
b get usually up  
c get up usually
- I have an English class \_\_\_\_\_.  
a one a week  
b one the week  
c once a week

## VOCABULARY

a Complete with *at, to, in, on, or up*.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday night I go to the cinema.
- I'm a student. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ university and I live \_\_\_\_\_ a flat.
- What time do you usually wake \_\_\_\_\_?
- What time do you go \_\_\_\_\_ work?

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

do get go have listen play read take watch wear

- |                            |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 _____ dressed            | 6 _____ the guitar    |
| 2 _____ the dog for a walk | 7 _____ to music      |
| 3 _____ a shower           | 8 _____ TV            |
| 4 _____ your homework      | 9 _____ the newspaper |
| 5 _____ shopping           | 10 _____ glasses      |

c Circle the word or phrase that is different.





- |            |               |            |              |
|------------|---------------|------------|--------------|
| 1 brother  | uncle         | niece      | grandfather* |
| 2 husband  | mother-in-law | stepsister | aunt         |
| 3 musician | doctor        | journalist | factory      |
| 4 never    | early         | always     | often        |
| 5 hour     | minute        | once       | second       |

d Complete the questions with *How many, Who, Why, What, or Where*.

- \_\_\_\_\_ do you live?
- \_\_\_\_\_ does your father do?
- \_\_\_\_\_ is your favourite family member?
- \_\_\_\_\_ hours do you work?
- \_\_\_\_\_ do you want to learn English?

## PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

-  work here earn turn
-  sometimes cousin nurse uncle
-  often home coffee doctor
-  father that brother think
- /tʒ/ lives watches finishes relaxes

b Underline the stressed syllable.

- |            |                |                 |
|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 be cause | 3 un em ployed | 5 grand mo ther |
| 2 den tist | 4 po lice man  |                 |



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

- a Read the text and complete the gaps with these verbs in the correct form.

do drink drive earn eat have (x2)  
know live spend think travel work

- b Read the text again. Is a typical man from your country similar to the typical British man?  
c Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

## Is this the typical British man?

Statistics tell us that the typical British man is 40 years old, <sup>1</sup> lives in a house and is married with two children. He <sup>2</sup> works more than 40 hours a week and <sup>3</sup> spends about £25,000 a year. He <sup>4</sup> commutes between fifty minutes and an hour to and from work every day. He <sup>5</sup> owns a Ford car and he <sup>6</sup> is a good driver.



The typical British man is overweight (he weighs about 82.5 kg) and he <sup>7</sup> exercises less than 30 minutes a week. He usually sleeps about seven hours a night. He is not a great cook, but he <sup>8</sup> knows how to make four dishes, including Spaghetti Bolognese. He <sup>9</sup> drinks three cups of tea a day and during his life he <sup>10</sup> has eaten approximately 35,000 biscuits.

The typical British man <sup>11</sup> has eight close friends and more than eighty contacts on his mobile phone. He <sup>12</sup> owns three TVs, a copy of Queen's *Greatest Hits*, and at least one of the Harry Potter books. He <sup>13</sup> spends thirteen hours online every week and forty-five hours a year waiting 'on hold' on the phone.



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

253)) In the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.



Nick Anya Alison Wells Stacey

- Nick works between \_\_\_\_\_ hours a week.  
a 20 and 30 b 30 and 40 c 40 and 50
- Anya's sister is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a 20 b 15 c 16
- Alison usually gets up at about \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend.  
a 10.00 b 7.00 c 7.30
- Wells \_\_\_\_\_ does sport.  
a hardly ever b sometimes c often
- Stacey \_\_\_\_\_.  
a has a cat b has two cats c doesn't like cats

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✓) the box if you can do them.

### Can you...?

- say where you live and what you do
- say what time you usually get up and go to bed
- say what you do on a typical Monday morning
- ask your partner questions with the words below
  - What sports...?
  - What languages...?
  - What kind of music...?
  - What TV programmes...?

Short films a British policeman  
Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.



# 5A Do you have the X Factor?

## 1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Can you remember the verbs for things people do in their free time?

d \_\_\_ exercise      p \_\_\_ the guitar  
l \_\_\_ to music      g \_\_\_ to the gym  
w \_\_\_ TV            h \_\_\_ a coffee

b ► p.158 Vocabulary Bank *More verb phrases.*

## 2 GRAMMAR can / can't

a Read about Gary's audition for a British TV programme where people try to become professional singers. Complete it with phrases a–e.

- a Can you come with me, please?
- b I can't remember the words!
- c you can have coffee downstairs.
- d we can't hear you.
- e Where can I park?

b (2 55) Listen and check.

c (2 56) Now listen to Gary and two other people (Justin and Naomi) sing. Vote for the person you want to be in the show.

d (2 57) Listen to the judges. What do they say about each singer? How does Gary feel?

e Look at four sentences with *can / can't*. Match sentences 1–4 with a–d.

- 1  You can't sing!
- 2  You can't park here.
- 3  Can you come with me, please?
- 4  You can have coffee downstairs.

- a It isn't OK.
- b It's possible.
- c Please do it.
- d You don't know how.

f ► p.132 Grammar Bank 5A. Learn more about *can / can't* and practise it.

12.30 I arrive in Manchester and drive to the Conference Centre. The traffic is terrible. I'm late!




**Guard** Hey! You can't park here.  
**Gary** <sup>1</sup> *Where can I park?*  
**Guard** In the car park over there.  
**Gary** OK. Where's the main entrance?  
**Guard** The entrance? It's in the other street.  
**Gary** Thanks!

12.45 I wait for my audition with 350 other singers. I'm very nervous.



**Organizer** You can practise your songs here, and <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Good luck!

6.00 Five hours later! Finally a woman calls my number.



**Organizer** <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ It's your turn now.

6.15 I walk onto the stage. I can see a table and three judges.



**Judge** What's your song?  
**Gary** *House of the Rising Sun* by The Animals.  
**Judge** Sorry, <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Can you speak up?  
**Gary** *House of the Rising Sun*.  
**Judge** You can start when you're ready... Can you start, please?

This is it. Oh no!  
5 \_\_\_\_\_

24talk.ir



### 3 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

- a (2 59) Listen and repeat the dialogues. Copy the rhythm.

A Can you come tomorrow?  
B Yes. I can come in the morning.

A Can you play a musical instrument?

B Yes, I can.

A What can you play?

B I can play the guitar.

A Can we park here?

B No, you can't. You can't park here.

- b (2 60) Listen. Can you hear the difference?

1 a I can sing.

b I can't sing.

2 a She can dance very well.

b She can't dance very well.

3 a He can cook.

b He can't cook.

4 a I can come to the meeting.

b I can't come to the meeting.

5 a You can park here.

b You can't park here.

6 a I can drive.

b I can't drive.

- c (2 61) Listen. Circle a or b.

### 4 SPEAKING

- a ► **Communication** Do you want to be famous? p.102. Are you musical, artistic, sporty, or good with words? Interview your partner and complete the survey.
- b Change partners and tell your new partner what your first partner can and can't do.

### 5 READING

- a *The X Factor* is a British TV programme. Look at the title of the article and the photos. With a partner, guess which two of the singers are 'winners' today. Then read the article and check.
- b Look at the highlighted words and phrases related to pop music. With a partner, guess their meaning. Are the words similar in your language?
- c Do you have similar programmes to *The X Factor* in your country? Can you remember the names of some of the winners? Where are they now?

- 6 (2 62) **SONG** Famous 🎵

# X FACTOR winners

## WHERE ARE THEY NOW?

'In the future everyone will be famous for fifteen minutes.' Andy Warhol

### STEVE BROOKSTEIN

#### WINNER FIRST SERIES

And then? A recording contract with Sony and a number 1 with his first and only single. Later a job as a singer on a ferry boat between England and Spain.

Today? No recording contract. He gives concerts in pubs in Britain to small audiences.



### LEONA LEWIS

#### WINNER THIRD SERIES

And then? Number 1 hits in the USA and UK and top ten records in many other countries. An appearance at the Olympic opening ceremony and three Grammy awards.

And today? She has a new album coming soon.



### LEON JACKSON

#### WINNER FOURTH SERIES

And then? A recording contract with Sony and a number 1 single, *When you believe*.

And today? He gives concerts in small nightclubs and pubs in the UK. He now plays the guitar and piano, too, but he doesn't have a recording contract.



### ALEXANDRA BURKE

#### WINNER FIFTH SERIES

And then? 1 million copies sold of her version of Leonard Cohen's *Hallelujah*. Three number 1 singles.

And today? She has a recording contract with Epic Records and she is also the face of *Sure Women*, a deodorant.





# 5B Love your neighbours

## 1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

verb phrases

- a (3 2)) Read the article about neighbours. Then listen to eight sounds, and write a–h in the boxes.

### Noisy neighbours the top problems!

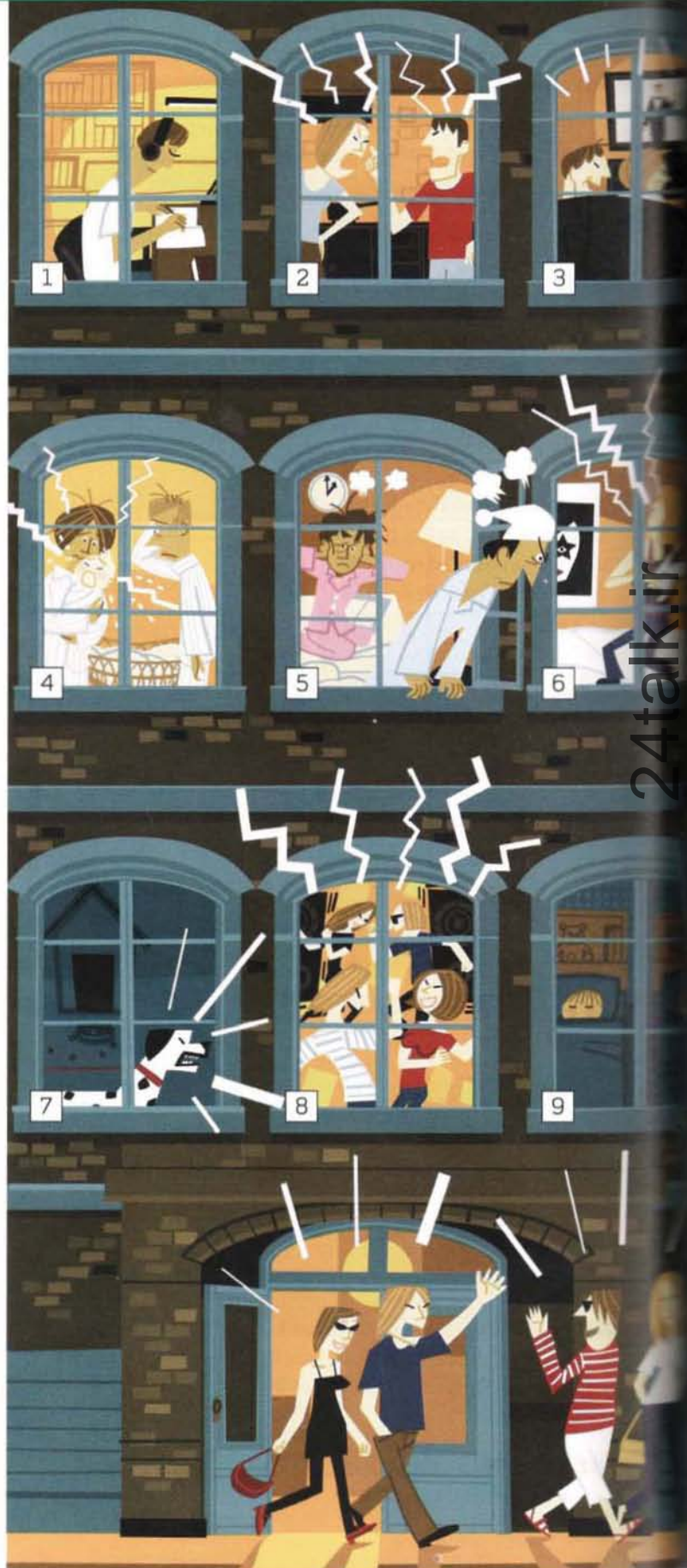
Sometimes it is difficult to love your neighbours, especially when they make a lot of noise. These are some things people do that cause problems in the UK (not in order).

- Their babies cry.
- Their dogs bark.
- They talk loudly or argue a lot.
- They have noisy parties.
- Their children shout all the time.
- They have the TV on very loud.
- They play loud music.
- They play musical instruments.

- b Which do you think are the top three in the UK? Which do you think are the top three in *your* country?
- c Do the questionnaire with a partner.

### Are your neighbours noisy? Are you a noisy neighbour?

- 1 Do you live in a house or a flat?
- 2 Do you have neighbours...?
  - a upstairs
  - b downstairs
  - c next door
- 3 Are your neighbours...?
  - a very noisy
  - b quite noisy
  - c not very noisy
- 4 Which of the things in a do they do? Do they make any other noises?
- 5 Are you a noisy neighbour? Which of the things in a do you or your family do?





## 2 GRAMMAR present continuous

- a (33) Look at the picture of the flats. Why do you think the couple in flat 5 can't sleep? Listen and check.
- b Listen again and complete the dialogues with verbs from the list.

arguing crying doing getting going happening having saying shouting (x2)

1 **Man** Are you awake?

**Woman** Yes. What's that noise?

**M** They're \_\_\_\_\_ a party downstairs.

**W** Again! What time is it?

**M** 12.00.

2 **W** Who's \_\_\_\_\_?

**M** People in the street. From the party.

**W** What's \_\_\_\_\_? Why are they \_\_\_\_\_?

**M** I can't hear.

**W** Are they \_\_\_\_\_?

**M** No, they aren't. They're \_\_\_\_\_ goodbye. Excuse me! We're trying to sleep. It's 1.00 in the morning!

3 **M** Oh no. Now the baby next door is \_\_\_\_\_!

**W** What's the time?

**M** It's 5.00.

**W** What are you \_\_\_\_\_? Where are you \_\_\_\_\_?

**M** I'm \_\_\_\_\_ up. I can't sleep with that noise.

c Complete the sentences.

⊕ They \_\_\_\_\_ having a party in number 8.

⊖ \_\_\_\_\_ they arguing?

⊖ No, they \_\_\_\_\_ arguing. They're saying goodbye.

d Read the rule and (circle) the right word.

We use the present continuous (*be + verb + -ing*) to talk about *now / every day*.

e ► p.132 Grammar Bank 5B. Learn more about the present continuous and practise it.

f (35) Listen to the sounds. What's happening? Write six sentences.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /ŋ/

a (36) Listen and repeat the words and sound.



singer

singing dancing going doing  
studying language wrong young  
think bank pink thanks

b In pairs, point and ask and answer about the people in the flats.

What's he doing?

He's playing the guitar.  
What are they doing?

c ► Communication Spot the differences A p.102 B p.107. Describe the pictures and find eight differences.

## 4 LISTENING

a (37) Look at the photo and read about Rebecca Flint. Then listen to her talking about noise rules where she lives. Does she think they are a good thing or a bad thing?

### Switzerland

#### The sound of silence

Switzerland has very strict anti-noise rules, especially for people who live in flats. **Rebecca Flint**, a British woman who lives and works in the Swiss town of Chur, tells us about a life without noise.



b Listen again and complete the sentences.

#### During the week

1 She can't \_\_\_\_\_ between 12.30 and 2.00 p.m.

2 She can't \_\_\_\_\_ without headphones or \_\_\_\_\_ after 10 p.m.

3 She can't have a \_\_\_\_\_ or a \_\_\_\_\_ after 10 p.m.

#### On Saturdays

4 She can \_\_\_\_\_, but it can't be loud after 10 p.m.

#### On Sundays

5 She can't \_\_\_\_\_ furniture or put a \_\_\_\_\_ on the wall.

6 She can't \_\_\_\_\_ the washing machine.

c Do you think these are good or bad rules? Why (not)? Do you have any similar rules in your country? What happens if you make a lot of noise late at night?



Look!  
 It's raining!

It always  
 rains here.

# 5C Sun and the City

## 1 VOCABULARY & LISTENING

the weather and seasons

- a Look at the photo and answer the questions.
- 1 What city is it?
  - 2 What monument can you see?
  - 3 What's the weather like? Do you think it's typical weather there?



- b ➤ p.159 Vocabulary Bank *The weather and dates*. Do part 1.
- c (3 10)) Listen to a travel guide talking about the weather in London. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
- 1 It's often very hot or very cold.
  - 2 The normal temperature in the summer is 32°C.
  - 3 It often snows in the winter.
  - 4 In spring and autumn the weather changes a lot.
  - 5 It's often grey and foggy in London.
- d What's the weather like where you live in the different seasons?

## 2 READING & SPEAKING

- a Read the guidebook extract about things to do in London, and find the answers to the 'Where can you...?' questions. Answer with **SH** (Somerset House), **SK** (South Kensington), or **HH** (Hampstead Heath).
- b Read the text again. Underline three new words in each paragraph. Compare with a partner.
- c Talk to a partner.
- Which of the three places would you prefer to go to? Why?
  - Where is a good place to go in *your* town...?
    - when it's very cold
    - when it's raining
    - when the sun is shining
  - What can you do in these places?

# WHAT TO DO IN LONDON...

## 1 WHEN IT'S VERY COLD

**Go ice skating at Somerset House.** Somerset House is a beautiful 18th century building on the river Thames. In the winter, the area in front of the house is made into an ice-skating rink. There is a skating school, where you can have lessons, and there are also late-night sessions and DJ nights. In November and December there is an enormous Christmas tree, and the café serves special Christmas food.

## 2 WHEN IT'S RAINING

**Go to South Kensington, and visit three wonderful museums.** You can walk from one to the other because they are all very near. The Science Museum is very popular with adults and children, and also the Natural History Museum, which has life-size robotic dinosaurs and other fascinating exhibits. The third museum, the Victoria and Albert Museum, is full of art and design from all over the world. It has an amazing collection of fashion from the 17th century to the present day. And if the sun comes out, cross the road into Kensington Gardens, one of London's many parks, and visit the famous statue of Peter Pan.

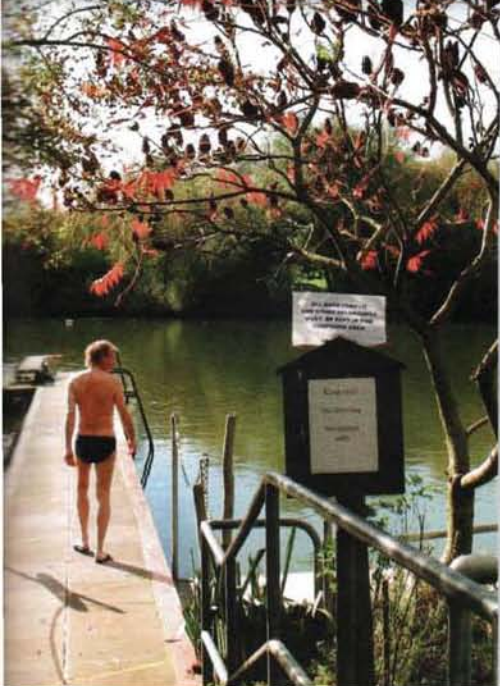
## 3 WHEN THE SUN IS SHINING

**Go to Hampstead Heath, London's biggest park.** From the top of Parliament Hill, in the south part of the Heath, you can see many of London's famous monuments, including St Paul's Cathedral and the London Eye. Have a picnic, and then, if it's hot, walk to the open-air swimming pool, where you can swim with plants and trees all round you. It is a magical place, and you can't believe that you are in the middle of a capital city.

### WHERE CAN YOU...?

- |   |                          |   |
|---|--------------------------|---|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | learn to do something new               |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | eat outside                             |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | have a fantastic view                   |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | see beautiful old clothes               |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | do some exercise                        |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | have fun after 9 p.m.                   |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | see some animals that don't exist today |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | see a famous character from a book      |





### 3 GRAMMAR present simple or present continuous?

a (3 11) Jack and his Swedish girlfriend Ingrid are on the London Eye. Cover the conversation and listen. Tick (✓) the places they see.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Trafalgar Square         | <input type="checkbox"/> St Paul's Cathedral |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Buckingham Palace        | <input type="checkbox"/> Westminster Abbey   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The Houses of Parliament | <input type="checkbox"/> Big Ben             |

b Listen to the conversation again, and put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous or the present simple.

I Come on, let's stand over there.  
 J It's *moving*. (move). We \_\_\_\_\_ (go) up. Look, that's St Paul's Cathedral.  
 I Where? Oh yes, I can see it. Is that Buckingham Palace?  
 J Yes, and the Queen's at home.  
 I How do you know?  
 J Because the flag \_\_\_\_\_ (fly). It only \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) when she's at home.

I I think it \_\_\_\_\_ (start) to rain. Oh, yes look, it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain).  
 J It always \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) when we're sightseeing!  
 I We \_\_\_\_\_ (go) down now. I \_\_\_\_\_ (love) the view of the river with Big Ben and the Houses of Parliament.  
 J Me too. Go and stand there. I \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to take a photo.

I Quick, the door \_\_\_\_\_ (open). Let's go.

c Read the conversation again, and focus on the verbs *fly* and *rain*. When do we use the present simple? When do we use the present continuous?

d ► p.132 Grammar Bank 5C. Learn more about the present simple and present continuous and practise them.

e ► Communication *What do you do? What are you doing now?*  
 A p.103 B p.108.

### 4 PRONUNCIATION places in London

a (3 13) Place names in London are sometimes difficult for visitors to pronounce and understand. Listen. Underline the stressed syllable in the **bold** words.

Tra|fal|gar Square    the Lon|don Eye    Ox|ford Street    St Paul's Ca|the|dral  
 Leices|ter Square    Buck|ing|ham Pa|lace    The Hou|ses of Par|liam|ent  
 West|min|ster Abbey    the Ri|ver Thames    Co|vent Gar|den

b Listen again and repeat the names.

c Practise with a partner. Imagine you are in a taxi.

Where do you want to go? ) ( To Trafalgar Square, please.

### 5 WRITING

a Are social networking sites, e.g. Twitter or Facebook, popular in your country? What kind of people use them? Do you or your friends use them?

b ► p.113 Writing *Social networking*. Write Facebook posts to say what you are doing on holiday.



# Practical English In a clothes shop



## 1 VOCABULARY clothes

a Match the words and pictures.



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> a jacket /'dʒækɪt/   | <input type="checkbox"/> a skirt /skɜ:t/    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> jeans /dʒi:nz/       | <input type="checkbox"/> shoes /ʃu:z/       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a shirt /ʃɜ:t/       | <input type="checkbox"/> a sweater /'swetə/ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a T-shirt /'ti:ʃɜ:t/ | <input type="checkbox"/> trousers /'traʊnz/ |

b (3.14) Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

## 2 MEETING IN THE STREET

a (3.15) Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. What problem does Rob have?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Rob has a \_\_\_\_\_ for Jenny.
- 2 Jenny has another meeting with \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Rob has an interview in \_\_\_\_\_ minutes.
- 4 Jenny's meeting is at \_\_\_\_\_ past nine.
- 5 Rob needs to buy a new \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 They go to a clothes \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Jenny needs to answer her \_\_\_\_\_.

c (3.16) Look at the information box. Listen and repeat the phrases.

Apologizing	
I'm sorry.	That's OK.
I'm so sorry.	Don't worry.
I'm really sorry.	No problem.

d Cover the box. In pairs, practise apologizing and responding.

## 3 BUYING CLOTHES

a (3.17) Watch or listen to Rob buying a shirt. Answer the questions.

- 1 What size does Rob want?
- 2 Does he try it on?
- 3 How much is the shirt?





b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Can I _____ you?	Yes, what size is this shirt?
Let's see. It's a small. What _____ do you need?	A medium.
This is a _____.	Thanks. Where can I try it on?
The changing _____ are over there.	Thank you.
_____ is it?	It's fine. How much is it?
_____	It's £44.99.

c (3 18)) Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

**Saying prices**  
 £5.00 = five pounds  
 £5.50 = five pounds fifty  
 50p = fifty pence

**Sizes**  
 Sizes S = small, M = medium, L = large XL = extra large

d Practise the dialogue with a partner.

e In pairs, roleplay buying clothes.

A (book open) You are the shop assistant. Start with *Can I help you?*

B (book closed) You are the customer. Buy a T-shirt, a jacket, or jeans.

f Swap roles.



## 4 JENNY'S ON THE PHONE

a (3 19)) Watch or listen and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

- Jenny is talking to Eddie.
- She says she doesn't like London.
- She says she likes the people in the office.
- Jenny is standing outside the shop.
- Eddie thinks that Rob is her boss.
- Jenny loves Rob's new shirt.



b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or Eddie?

### Social English phrases

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| It's so cool!   | I have to go. |
| Right now?      | Have fun!     |
| Don't be silly! | What's wrong? |
| Wait a minute.  | No way!       |

### British and American English

- shop = British English  
 store = American English

d (3 20)) Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?

- apologize
- buy clothes
- say prices





Do you like her?

Yes, I want to meet her.

# 6A Reading in English



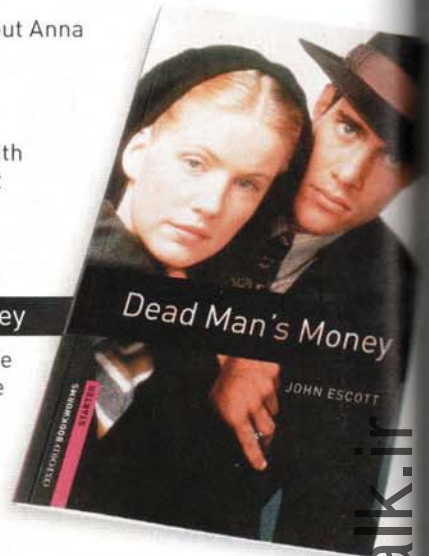
## Red Roses

'Who is the man with the roses in his hand?' thinks Anna. I want to meet **him**.  
 'Who is the girl with the guitar?' thinks Will. 'I like **her**. I want to meet **her**.'  
 But they do not meet.  
 'There are lots of men,' says Anna's friend Vicki, but Anna can't forget Will. And then one rainy day...



## Sally's Phone

Sally is always running, and she has her phone with **her** all the time: at home, on the train, at work, at lunchtime, and at the shops.  
 But then one afternoon suddenly she has a different phone...and it changes her life.



## Dead Man's Money

When Cal Dexter rents one of the Blue Lake Cabins, he finds \$3,000 – under the floor! He doesn't know it, but it is the money from a bank robbery. A dead man's money.  
 'Do I take it to the police?' he thinks.  
 But three more people want the money, and two of **them** are dangerous.  
 Can Cal stop **them**?

## 1 GRAMMAR object pronouns

- a Look at the three book covers and read the information which tells you what the book is about. Answer the questions with *Red Roses (RR)*, *Sally's Phone (SP)*, or *Dead Man's Money (DMM)*.

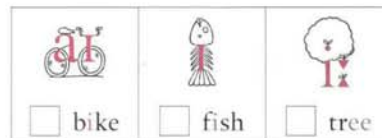
### Which book...?

- 1 \_\_\_ is a love story
  - 2 \_\_\_ takes place in the USA
  - 3 \_\_\_ is about a person who is quite stressed
  - 4 \_\_\_ is about a man in a difficult situation
  - 5 \_\_\_ is about a person who is romantic
  - 6 \_\_\_ has a gadget which is important
- b Look at the highlighted words in the texts. Who do they refer to?
- { *him* = the man with the roses
- c ► p.134 Grammar Bank 6A. Learn more about object pronouns and practise them.
- d (3 22)) Listen and say the sentences with a pronoun instead of the name(s).

))) I like Anna. { I like her.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION /aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /iː/

- a (3 23)) Say the three groups of words and match them to a sound picture. Listen and check.



- 1 him it his ring finish pick
- 2 he she me meet read leave
- 3 I my buy smile nice tonight

- b (3 24)) Listen. Can you hear the difference?

- |          |       |           |         |
|----------|-------|-----------|---------|
| 1 a he's | b his | 4 a leave | b live  |
| 2 a me   | b my  | 5 a this  | b these |
| 3 a it   | b eat | 6 a we    | b why   |

- c (3 25)) Listen and tick (✓) the word you hear.

- d (3 26)) Listen to this love story. Practise telling it.

They live in a big city.  
 He works in an office, she's a writer.  
 She meets him in the gym. She likes his smile.  
 He thinks she loves him. He buys her a ring.  
 But finally she says goodbye.



### 3 READING & LISTENING

- a (3 27)) Read and listen to an extract from *Sally's Phone*. Answer the questions.

#### CHARACTERS:

- Sally, a young woman
- Claire, Sally's friend from work
- Andrew, Sally's boyfriend
- Paul, a young man
- Katharine, Paul's sister

- 1 Where are Claire and Sally?
  - 2 Why doesn't Sally buy the skirt immediately?
  - 3 What do they do when they finish shopping?
  - 4 Why does she phone her mother?
  - 5 What is Paul doing when Sally is talking to her mother?
  - 6 What happens when he stands up?
  - 7 Do they go out of the café together?
- b Read the extract again. With a partner guess the meaning of the **highlighted** verbs.
- c (3 28)) Read and listen to the next part of the story. Why are Paul and Sally having problems?

#### 🔍 Pronouns and possessive adjectives

When you read, be careful with different kinds of pronouns and possessive adjectives, e.g. *he, his, him*, etc. Make sure you know who (or what) they refer to.

- d Read the extract again. With a partner, say who the **highlighted** pronouns and possessive adjectives refer to.

Paul wants to phone **his** mother. **his** = Paul's

- e **Underline** words or phrases in the extract about phones or phoning, e.g. *rings, answers the phone*, etc.
- f What do you think happens in the end?

#### 🔍 Reading in English

Reading Graded Readers, e.g. the Oxford Bookworms series, helps you to learn and remember vocabulary and grammar. Buy or borrow a Starter level book (with a CD if possible).

### 4 SPEAKING

- **Communication** *Reading in English* p.103. Interview your partner.

#### Lunchtime

It is one o'clock. Sally and Claire are looking at skirts.

'Do you like this one, Sally?' Claire says. 'Yes, it's beautiful, but I never wear red.'

'Do you like red?' Claire asks.

'Yes, I do – but Andrew doesn't.'

'Well,' Claire says, 'it's a beautiful skirt. You like red. What do you want to do?'

Sally buys the skirt.

Claire goes back to work, but Sally wants a coffee. She goes into a café. She buys a coffee and sits down. Then she phones her mother.

'Hi, Mum. I have a new skirt – it's beautiful. I want to wear it tonight.'

'What colour is it?'

'It's red.'

'That's nice. Red is a good colour for you,' says her mother.

Next to Sally, Paul is finishing his coffee. He phones his friend and talks to him. Then he stands up. The bag with the red skirt falls on the floor.

'Oh! I'm sorry,' Paul says. 'That's OK,' Sally says. He puts down his phone and **picks up** the bag. 'Here's your bag.'

'Thank you.' She smiles.

'What a nice smile!' Paul thinks.

Paul picks up his phone and goes out of the café. Sally finishes her coffee. She picks up her bag and her phone, and goes back to work.



#### Afternoon

Paul is in his office.

A phone rings.

'What's that noise?' Paul thinks.

He answers the phone. It is Andrew.

'Hello, Sally?'

'It isn't Sally, it's Paul.'

'Paul? Paul who? Where's Sally?'

'Who's Sally? There's no Sally here.'

'Huh!'

Andrew finishes the call.

Paul wants to phone **his** mother. He finds 'Mum' on the phone, and presses the button.

'Hello Mum. It's Paul.'

'Paul? Who's Paul? I'm not Paul's mum. I'm Sally's mum.'

'What's happening?' Paul thinks.

'What number is that?' **he** asks.

'It's 0783 491839.'

'I'm very sorry,' Paul says. 'It's the wrong number.'

'That's OK,' Sally's mum says. 'What a nice voice!' **she** thinks.

Sally is at work.

Ring ring!

**She** answers the phone.

'Hello, is Paul there?'

'No, I'm sorry, this is...'

'Can you give a message to **him**? This is **his** sister Katharine.

There's a party at **my** house tonight. It's **my** birthday.'

'But I...'

'8 o'clock – OK. Bye.'





# 6B Times we love

## 1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION the date

a Number the months 1–6.

- April       June  
 February       March  
 January       May

b ► p.159 Vocabulary Bank *The weather and dates.* Do part 2.

### Ordinal numbers *first, fourth, etc.*

Some ordinal numbers can be difficult to say because they end in two or more consonant sounds, e.g. **sixth** /sɪksθ/.

c (3 31)) Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers. Then practise saying them.

fifth sixth eighth twelfth

d (3 32)) How do you say these dates? Listen and check.

1/3 2/11 3/5 4/6  
 5/1 6/7 12/9 17/10  
 20/8 23/2 28/4 31/12

e Listen again and repeat the dates. Copy the rhythm.

the **first** of March

f What days are public holidays in your country?

g Ask the other students in your class *When's your birthday?* Does anyone have the same (or nearly the same) birthday as you?

## 2 READING

a Read the first part of the text. What's special about the third Monday in January and the third Friday in June?

# Favourite Times

In the UK the third Monday in January is the most depressing day of the year, says psychologist Dr Cliff Arnall, who calls it Blue Monday. Why? Because it's winter, the weather is usually grey and cold, the days are dark, and Monday is the first day of the working week. People are also often short of money after Christmas, and some people feel bad after breaking their New Year resolutions. And the happiest day of the year? 'The third Friday in June,' says Dr Arnall. And it's easy to see why – it's summer, it's warm outside, the evenings are light, and the weekend starts now!

We asked our readers about the days and times during the year that make them feel good.

- 1 What's your favourite time of day? Why?
- 2 What's your favourite day of the week? Why?
- 3 What's your favourite month? Why?
- 4 What's your favourite season? Why?
- 5 What's your favourite public holiday? Why?

b Read the questions and Joe's and Rose's answers and complete them with phrases a–f.

- |                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| a every week is different | d I love cooking     |
| b I like making plans     | e the days are long  |
| c I hate getting up early | f I like being awake |

c Look at the highlighted words and phrases and guess their meaning.







### Joe 24

- Ten thirty at night. Because it's the time of day when I can really relax.
- Saturday. Because <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ during the week, and Saturday is the first day when I can stay in bed until 12 if I want!
- August. Because my birthday is in August and I'm usually on holiday.
- The summer. Because the weather's good, <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, and people are in a good mood.
- January 1st. Because it's the start of a new year, and <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

### Rose 35

- Early morning. Because <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ when other people are asleep, and the light is beautiful.
- It depends. Because <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_!
- May. Because the world is pale green, and asparagus is in season!
- Autumn. Because the leaves are red and yellow, and it's a time for lots of wonderful fruit and vegetables. <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_!
- Easter Sunday. Because I love chocolate, and I always have a lot of Easter eggs!

asparagus

Easter egg

New Year resolutions promises we make on December 31st, e.g. to eat or drink less in the new year  
Easter Sunday an important Christian holiday in March or April



### 3 LISTENING

- a (3 33)) Listen to Martin answering the questions in *Favourite Times*. Complete column 1.

1 What's your favourite...? 2 Why?

time of day:

during the week \_\_\_\_\_

at the weekend \_\_\_\_\_

day of the week \_\_\_\_\_

month \_\_\_\_\_

season \_\_\_\_\_

public holiday \_\_\_\_\_

- b Listen again and complete column 2.

### 4 GRAMMAR like + (verb + -ing)

- a Complete the chart with a verb from the list.

don't like hate don't mind like love

😊	😊	_____
😊	😊	_____
😊	😐	_____
😊	😐	_____
😐	😐	_____
😐	😐	_____

- b What form of the verb follows *like*, *love*, *don't mind*, and *hate*?

- c ► p.134 Grammar Bank 6B. Learn more about *like + (verb + -ing)* and practise it.

### 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

- a Write a verb or verb phrase for each picture. Use the *-ing* form of the verb.



- b In pairs, ask and answer about each activity.

A Do you like reading? B Yes, I love it.

A What writers do you like? B I like Terry Pratchett. What about you?

- c Interview your partner with the five questions from *Favourite Times* in 2.

- d Write an article called *My favourite times*. Add photos or drawings if you can. Use the texts in 2 as a model.



# 6C Music is changing their lives

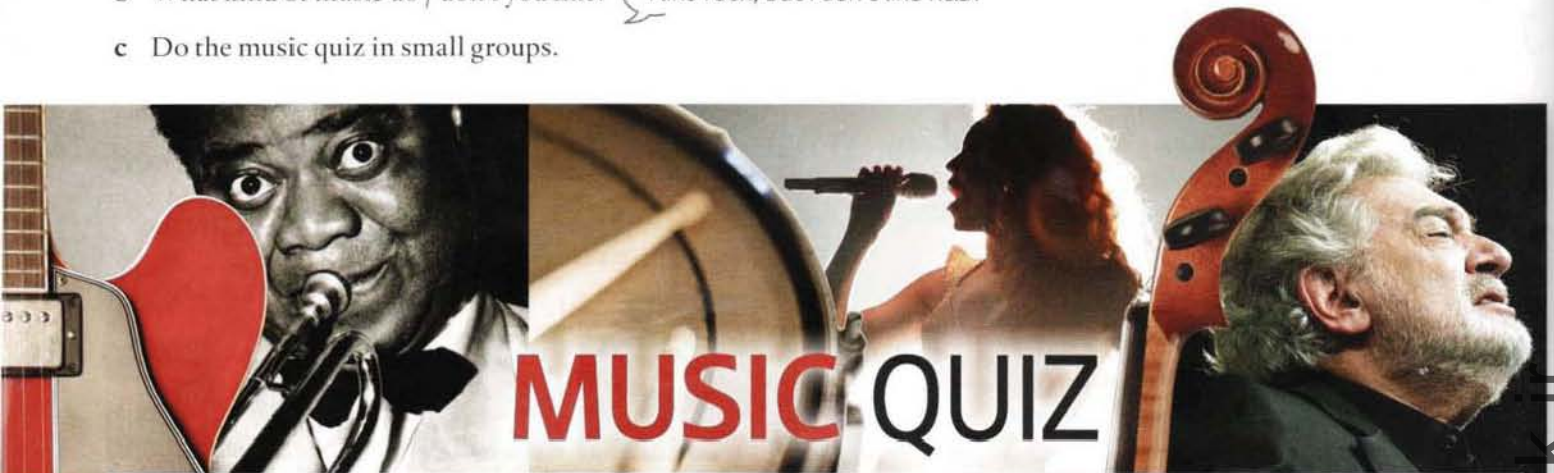
## 1 VOCABULARY music

a (3.35) Listen and number the kinds of music 1–9. Can you name any other kinds of music in English?

- hip hop  rock  classical  Latin  jazz  reggae /ˈreɪɡeɪ/  blues  heavy metal  R&B

b What kind of music do / don't you like? *I like rock, but I don't like R&B.*

c Do the music quiz in small groups.



1 What kind of music are these people famous for?

- a Beyoncé
- b Louis Armstrong
- c Jay-Z
- d Yehudi Menuhin
- e Queen
- f Bob Marley

2 Where are they from? Match the singers and bands to their countries.

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| a <input type="checkbox"/> Coldplay        | 1 Germany  |
| b <input type="checkbox"/> Rihanna         | 2 Ireland  |
| c <input type="checkbox"/> Placido Domingo | 3 Britain  |
| d <input type="checkbox"/> Black Eyed Peas | 4 Barbados |
| e <input type="checkbox"/> U2              | 5 Spain    |
| f <input type="checkbox"/> Fools Garden    | 6 the USA  |

3 Whose music do you hear in the soundtrack of these films / shows?

- a We Will Rock You
- b This Is It
- c Yellow Submarine
- d Amadeus
- e Mamma Mia!

## 2 GRAMMAR revision: *be or do?*

a Circle the right words.

- 1 What kind of music *are you / do you* listen to?
- 2 *I'm not / I don't* like hip hop.
- 3 *Are you / Do you* play in a band?
- 4 She *isn't / doesn't* listening to you.
- 5 Where *are / do* Coldplay from?


b ► p.134 Grammar Bank 6C. Learn more about *be* and *do* and practise them.

c (3.38) Listen and make the questions.

- ))) They're German. *Are they German?*
- ))) He plays the guitar. *Does he play the guitar?*

## 3 PRONUNCIATION /j/

a (3.39) Listen and repeat the words and sound.

 yacht	yes you yellow
	young your yoga year

### Hidden /j/ sound

Some words with the /u:/ sound (spelled with *u* or *ew*) also have a /j/ sound before the /u:/, e.g. music /ˈmju:zɪk/, NOT /ˈmu:zɪk/.

b (3.40) Listen and repeat the sentences. Then practise saying them.

- 1 That young musician plays beautiful music.
- 2 He usually uses a yellow pencil.
- 3 The new students start in January this year.



## 4 SPEAKING

- a Read the music questionnaire. Complete the questions with *are* or *do*. Complete question 6 with the names of six musicians / bands you either love or hate.

### Music questionnaire

- \_\_\_\_\_ you a big fan of a singer or band?  
\_\_\_\_\_ you a member of a fan club or forum?
- How often \_\_\_\_\_ you...?
  - go to concerts or gigs
  - go dancing
  - watch MTV (or other music channels)
  - download music
  - look for song lyrics on the internet
  - sing karaoke
- How \_\_\_\_\_ you usually listen to music?
  - on the radio
  - online
  - on your iPod/MP3 player
  - on CDs
- What kind of music \_\_\_\_\_ you like listening to when you are...?
  - sad
  - happy
  - stressed
- \_\_\_\_\_ you listening to a particular song or piece of music a lot at the moment?
- What \_\_\_\_\_ you think of...?

Male musicians

Female musicians

Bands

#### Giving opinions

I like him.

I don't like her.

I think they're  
great / fantastic.  
OK / not bad.  
awful / terrible.

- b Take turns to interview a partner with the music questionnaire. Ask for more information. Do you have similar musical tastes?

## 5 READING

- a Do you play a musical instrument? What? Do you enjoy playing it?  
b Read the article. How is music changing the lives of young people in Venezuela?

### Music is changing their lives

Inside the **concert hall** a top **orchestra** is playing brilliantly. Their young **conductor**, Gustavo Dudamel, is one of the best in the world. But we are not in New York, London, or Vienna. We are in Caracas, the capital of Venezuela. The orchestra is the Simón Bolívar Youth orchestra, and its conductor and young musicians come from the poorest families in the country. They are a product of *El Sistema* ('the system' in Spanish), a project started in 1975 to save poor children from crime and drug addiction through classical music.



Today more than 270,000 young Venezuelans from the *barrios* (poor areas in Caracas) are learning to play instruments. They **practise** Beethoven and Brahms instead of learning to steal and shoot. Gisella, aged 11, says 'I am learning the **viola** because I want to escape from the *barrio*. In Venezuela now it's cooler to like Strauss than salsa.' Edgar, 22, who plays in the orchestra, says 'sometimes when we finish late I stay in town – it's dangerous to go home at that time. But now most of my friends are here. We are a family as well as an orchestra.'

Dudamel is now also the Musical Director of the Los Angeles Philharmonic, one of the USA's top orchestras. But he returns frequently to Caracas to conduct. 'I miss my orchestra, but I will never leave them. They're family,' he says.



- c Look at the **highlighted** words. With a partner, guess their meaning.  
d Do you know of any other projects to help poor children?

## 6 WRITING

► p.113 **Writing** An informal email. You are going to write a similar email to a penfriend.

## 7 41))) SONG *Lemon Tree* 🎵



# 5&6 Revise and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

- She \_\_\_\_\_ the piano.  
a can play b can to play c cans play
- \_\_\_\_\_ come tonight?  
a Do you can b You can c Can you
- A What's that noise?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ a party upstairs.  
a They having  
b They're having  
c They're have
- The weather is cold, but \_\_\_\_\_ raining.  
a it doesn't b it isn't c it not
- A What \_\_\_\_\_ doing?  
B I'm studying for an exam.  
a are you b do you c you are
- Look! The Queen's flag \_\_\_\_\_.  
a fly b flies c is flying
- The museum \_\_\_\_\_ at 2.00 on Mondays.  
a closes b is closing c close
- A What \_\_\_\_\_?  
B I'm a nurse.  
a are you doing b do you do c do you
- Our son always phones \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
a we b us c our
- Is your sister at home? I need to speak to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a him b she c her
- Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ housework?  
a doing b do making
- I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ early.  
a get up b getting up c to get up
- A \_\_\_\_\_ hungry?  
B Yes. What's for dinner?  
a Do you b Have you c Are you
- What song \_\_\_\_\_ listening to?  
a are you b do you c you are
- What time \_\_\_\_\_ she usually go to bed?  
a do b is c does

## VOCABULARY

a Complete the phrases with these verbs.

buy call dance forget have hear play run take tell

- |                                   |                    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 _____ a noise                   | 6 _____ a party    |
| 2 _____ a musical instrument      | 7 _____ photos     |
| 3 _____ somebody's birthday       | 8 _____ a marathon |
| 4 _____ a present for your mother | 9 _____ a taxi     |
| 5 _____ somebody a secret         | 10 _____ a tango   |

b Complete the sentences with *for, in, on, to, or at*.





- She goes to bed \_\_\_\_\_ about eleven o'clock.
- They have their TV \_\_\_\_\_ very loud.
- I can't find the keys. Can you look \_\_\_\_\_ them?
- I need to talk \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor.
- I'm coming! Wait \_\_\_\_\_ me!
- My birthday's \_\_\_\_\_ July.
- Their wedding is \_\_\_\_\_ 2nd March.

c Circle the word that is different.

- |                 |             |            |              |
|-----------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1 cloudy        | wet         | snowy      | shine        |
| 2 shine         | rain        | blow       | fog          |
| 3 autumn        | season      | spring     | winter       |
| 4 first         | third       | seven      | twelfth      |
| 5 twenty-second | twenty-five | twenty-one | twenty-three |
| 6 May           | Sunday      | December   | June         |
| 7 call          | phone       | ring       | message      |
| 8 band          | rock        | reggae     | jazz         |

## PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

-  driving wrong change long
-  ice windy spring winter
-  snow go now cold
-  third the tenth Thursday
- /ju:/ music student beautiful blues

b Underline the stressed syllable.

- 1 neigh bour 2 re mem ber 3 Ju ly 4 Fe bru a ry 5 cla ssi cal



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the text and answer the questions.

Where is a good place to go in Dublin if you want to...?

- 1 have lunch or dinner
- 2 see animals
- 3 buy a present
- 4 hear stories about famous places
- 5 have a drink without paying

b Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

c Read the text again and underline the thing you would like to do most.

## Dublin – the friendly city

People don't usually think of capital cities as friendly, but people told me that Dublin is the exception, so I went there to see if it was true – and it was! Local people greet you like an old friend, they want to know everything about you, and about your day. The tourist guides are really friendly; for example, at the Guinness factory (somewhere you must go) they offer you a free glass of Guinness. The bus drivers on the tour buses (an excellent way to get around Dublin) tell very interesting and amusing stories about all the buildings and monuments they go past. They stop at all the main tourist attractions, for example Phoenix Park, the home to Dublin's zoo, St Patrick's Cathedral, and the main shopping areas (Grafton Street and O'Connell Street). When you want something to eat, the Temple Bar area is the place to go. Even in the restaurants Irish people want you to be happy. They often sit you at tables with other people, and the waiters tell jokes when they serve the food to make you laugh. In general, the food is great and very good value for money, there are lots of things to see, and hotels are cheap – how can you not be happy and friendly with all that?

Nick McCarthy *Coventry Telegraph* October 26 2010



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

3 42))) In the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.



Alison and Ben

Tiffany

Joel

Anya

- 1 Which sentence is true?
  - a Ben can't play a musical instrument.
  - b Alison can play the guitar well.
  - c Ben can play the guitar, but not very well.
- 2 Tiffany \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a has noisy neighbours
  - b doesn't have noisy neighbours
  - c is the noisy neighbour
- 3 Joel's favourite month is May because the weather is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a hot b nice c sunny
- 4 Ben doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a classical music b heavy metal c rock music
- 5 At the moment Anya is reading \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a a romantic novel b a biography c a trilogy

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

- 1  say two things you can do well, and two things you can't do (e.g. cook)
- 2  say three things you can or can't do in class (e.g. use your mobile)
- 3  say what kind of books you usually read, and what you are reading at the moment
- 4  ask your partner questions with the words below
  - ... tired? Why?
  - ... like watching sport on TV? Which sports?
  - ... enjoying your English classes?
  - ... play a musical instrument? Which one?

Short films Williamsburg, New York  
Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.



**G** past simple of *be*: *was / were*  
**V** word formation: *paint* > *painter*  
**P** sentence stress

Who was she?

She was a famous writer.

# 7A At the National Portrait Gallery

## 1 GRAMMAR *was / were*

a Read about the National Portrait Gallery in London and answer the questions.

- 1 Where is it?
- 2 What can you see there?
- 3 When is it open?
- 4 How much does it cost?

b (3.43)) Look at a photo which is in the National Portrait gallery. Cover the dialogue and listen. Who are the two people in the photo?

- A I love that photo. Who are they?  
 B I think it's King Edward VIII and Wallis Simpson. Let's see. Yes, that's right.  
 A When was he king? I don't remember a King Edward.  
 B Well, he was only king for 11 months, in 1936, I think. He was Queen Elizabeth II's uncle.  
 A Why was he only king for a short time?  
 B Because he was in love with Wallis Simpson, the woman in the photo. She was American. The government was against the marriage because she was divorced. It was a terrible scandal. In the end he abdicated\* and they got married.  
 A Who was the next king?  
 B His brother, George VI.  
 A Were Edward and Wallis happy?  
 B I think they were happy. They were together for the rest of their lives.

\* **abdicate** stop being king or queen

c Listen again and read the dialogue. Then complete the gaps.

Present simple	Past simple
He is the king.	He _____ the king.
She is divorced.	She _____ divorced.
They are happy.	They _____ happy.

d ► p.136 Grammar Bank 7A. Learn more about *was / were* and practise it.

## National Portrait Gallery

The National Portrait Gallery has a collection of portraits of famous British men and women, from the 16th century to the present day. The portraits are both paintings and photographs. The National Portrait Gallery is near Trafalgar Square, five minutes from the National Gallery, London's most important art gallery. It is open daily and entrance is free.



## 2 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

sentence stress

a (3.45)) Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

I was at a **party**. She was **born** in **Mexico**.  
 My **parents** were **angry**.

He **wasn't** at **home**. They **weren't** very **happy**.

**When** were you **born**? **Where** was the **hotel**?  
**Was** it **expensive**? No, it **wasn't**.  
**Were** they at the **concert**? Yes, they **were**.

b (3.46)) Say the sentences in the past simple.

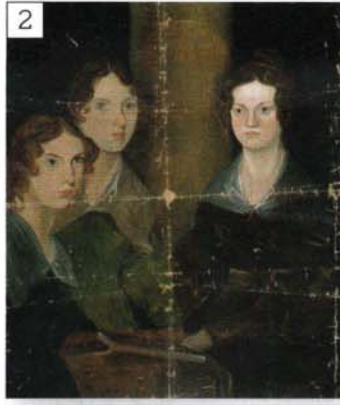
)) I'm at home. ( I was at home.

c ► Communication Where were you? A p.103 B p.108.



### 3 READING

Look at three more pictures from the National Portrait Gallery. Do you know who the people are or anything about them?



b (3 47)) Read and listen to three audio guide extracts. Check your answers to a.

- Henry VIII was born in 1491. He was King of England from 1509 to 1547 and is famous for separating the Church of England from the Roman Catholic Church, and for his six wives. When he was young, as in this picture, he was very strong and good-looking. He was an excellent sportsman, and was also a good musician and poet. However, in his old age he was very fat and always in pain.
- The Brontë sisters, Charlotte, Emily, and Anne, were born between 1816 and 1820 in a small village in the north of England. They were all writers, but only Charlotte, with her novel *Jane Eyre*, was famous in her lifetime. Their brother Branwell, the painter of this portrait, was originally in the picture between Emily and Charlotte. He wasn't happy with his self-portrait and now the painting shows only the three sisters.
- Helena Bonham Carter, the actress, was born in London in 1966. Her mother is half Spanish and her father, who died in 2004, was the grandson of Herbert Asquith, the British Prime Minister from 1908 to 1916. Her first big role was as Lucy Honeychurch in *A Room with a View*, and her other roles include The Red Queen in *Alice in Wonderland*, Bellatrix Lestrange in the Harry Potter films, and Queen Elizabeth in *The King's Speech*. She has two children with her partner Tim Burton, a film director.

c Read the texts again and answer the questions.

- How long was Henry VIII King of England?
- What was he good at when he was a young man?
- Were the Brontë sisters famous when they were alive?
- Why isn't their brother in the picture?
- Who was Helena Bonham Carter's great-grandfather?
- What was her first famous film?

d Cover the texts. What can you remember?

### 4 VOCABULARY word formation

a Find words in the texts for people made from these words:

- |                |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|
| 1 sport _____  | 5 paint _____          |
| 2 music _____  | 6 act _____ (OR actor) |
| 3 poetry _____ | 7 direct film _____    |
| 4 write _____  |                        |



#### Word building: professions

We often add *-er* or *-or* to a verb, e.g. *writer*, *actor*.

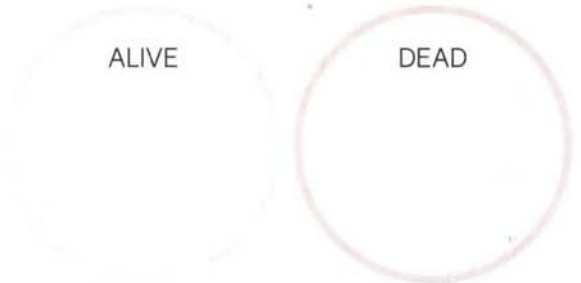
We often add *-ian*, *-ist*, or *-man / woman* to a noun, e.g. *musician*.

b Are the words below verbs or nouns? Do you know the words for the people?

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1 sing _____     | 6 novel _____    |
| 2 compose _____  | 7 business _____ |
| 3 politics _____ |                  |
| 4 science _____  | 8 sail _____     |
| 5 police _____   | 9 art _____      |
|                  | 10 invent _____  |

c (3 48)) Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable. Practise saying the words.

d Write the names of four famous people in each circle. Ask a partner.



Who's Shakira? She's a singer.

Who was Charles Darwin? He was a scientist.

### 5 LISTENING & WRITING

a (3 49)) Listen to five clues about two famous people. Do you know who they are?

b With a partner write clues about a famous man and a woman (both dead).

c Read your clues to another pair. Do they know the people?



# 7B Chelsea girls

## 1 READING & LISTENING

- a (3.50) Read and listen to the true story about a journey. Number the sentences 1–7.
- The taxi arrived at the girls' house.
  - They looked out of the window.
  - They chatted and listened to music.
  - 1 The girls wanted to go to a match.
  - The taxi stopped in a street with pretty houses.
  - They called a taxi.
  - The taxi driver typed their destination into his satnav.
- b (3.51) Listen and check. Do you think they were in London?
- c (3.52) Listen to the news story on the radio. Where were they?
- d ► **Communication** *Stamford Bridge p.103*. Read some tourist information about the place they were in and look at the map.
- e Do you think it is easy to make a mistake like this? Whose fault was it?

## 2 GRAMMAR

past simple: regular verbs

- a Read the text again and highlight ten more past simple regular verbs [+], one past simple negative sentence [-], and one past simple question [?].
- b In pairs, complete the chart and answer questions 1–3.

Present simple	Past simple
They want to go to the match.	They _____ to go to the match.
They don't talk to the taxi driver.	They _____ to the taxi driver.
Where do you want to go?	Where _____ to go?

- 1 What letters do you add to a regular verb in the past simple, e.g. *call*?
  - 2 What do you do if the verb ends in *e*, e.g. *type*?
  - 3 What happens to verbs which end with one vowel and one consonant, e.g. *chat*, *stop*?
- c ► p.136 Grammar Bank 7B. Learn more about past simple regular verbs and practise them.



Althorp House

Charles Spencer, Princess Diana's brother, has three daughters, 18-year-old Kitty, and 15-year-old twins Eliza and Amelia. They live in Althorp, a large country house near Northampton, about 85 miles (136 kilometres) north of London.



The Spencer sisters

One of the sisters and her friend wanted to go to a football match in London. It was a Premier League match between Chelsea and Arsenal at Stamford Bridge. They called a taxi to take them to London and back. The taxi arrived and the driver typed Stamford Bridge into his satnav. The girls relaxed in the back of the car. They probably chatted, listened to music on their iPods, and texted their friends. They didn't talk to the taxi driver.

Two hours later the taxi stopped. They looked out of the window. It was a street with pretty houses.

The girls were a bit surprised, and they asked the taxi driver where they were. 'In Stamford Bridge,' he said. 'Where did you want to go?'



Stamford Bridge Stadium



- d Stand up and move around the class. Ask *Did you... yesterday?* questions with the verb phrases below. When somebody answers *Yes, I did*, write their name.

## YESTERDAY

### Find a person who...

- used satnav \_\_\_\_\_
- watched a football match \_\_\_\_\_
- chatted online \_\_\_\_\_
- studied for an exam \_\_\_\_\_
- cooked dinner \_\_\_\_\_
- arrived at work / school late \_\_\_\_\_
- listened to the radio \_\_\_\_\_
- started a new book \_\_\_\_\_
- worked / studied until late \_\_\_\_\_
- played a computer game \_\_\_\_\_

*Did you use satnav yesterday?* *No, I didn't. Did you...?*

## 3 PRONUNCIATION -ed endings

### Past simple regular verbs

The e in -ed is not usually pronounced, and -ed is pronounced /d/ or /t/, e.g. *closed* /kləʊzd/, *stopped* /stɒpt/. The -ed is pronounced /ɪd/ **only** in verbs which end with the sound /t/ or /d/, e.g. *waited* /ˈweɪtɪd/ *ended* /ˈendɪd/.

- a 3 54))) Listen and repeat the verbs.

1 -ed = /d/	2 -ed = /t/	3 -ed = /ɪd/
called	looked	wanted
arrived	relaxed	chatted
listened	stopped	texted

- b 3 55))) Look at the verbs in the list. Circle the ones that belong to group 3. Listen and check.

played finished started travelled asked missed  
cooked needed watched lived liked typed

- c 3 56))) Listen to some verb phrases. Make true  or  sentences about yesterday.

))) play tennis *I played tennis yesterday. / I didn't play tennis yesterday.*

## 4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

### past time expressions

- a Number the past time expressions 1–10.

- yesterday morning
- last night
- last month
- three days ago
- 1 five minutes ago
- last week
- last summer
- the day before yesterday
- a year ago
- in 2009

### Past time expressions

We say *last week*, *last month* NOT the *last week*, the *last month*.

- b 3 57))) Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

- c Look at the questionnaire below. Tell your partner true sentences with past time expressions. Ask for more information.

*I cried at the end of a film last week.* *Oh really? What was it?*

## When was the last time you...?



- \* cried at the end of a film
- \* travelled by plane
- \* started a new hobby
- \* walked more than 10 km

- \* booked tickets online
- \* downloaded a song
- \* played sport
- \* missed an English class



- \* watched a really good film
- \* called a friend
- \* danced



What did you do?

We went to a restaurant.

# 7C A night to remember

## 1 READING

- a Look at the photos and read the introduction to the article. For each photo, say why you think the night was memorable.
- b Read about two people's nights, and match them to a photo.
- c Read the texts again and match the questions to their answers in the texts.
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> What time did you get back?   | <input type="checkbox"/> What did you wear? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> What was the weather like?    | <input type="checkbox"/> Who were you with? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Why was it a memorable night? | <input type="checkbox"/> What did you do?   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> When was it? Where were you?  |   |



## Why do we remember some nights in our lives?

Is it because we went to a beautiful place, met interesting people, heard wonderful music, or saw a fantastic film?

We asked people all over the world to tell us about a night that they can never forget...

### Maria Julia from Argentina

- 1 It was in August two years ago when I was on holiday in Athens.
- 2 I wanted to see a man that I knew a little when I was at university. He was Greek and he lived in Athens. I called him many times, but he didn't answer. Suddenly, on my last night, he came to my hotel.
- 3 I felt embarrassed, because my clothes weren't very special – a green skirt and a white T-shirt and Greek sandals – and my hair was a mess.
- 4 We went out and walked around the centre of Athens. We spoke English, but he taught me some Greek words and I taught him some Spanish.
- 5 It was a warm night with a beautiful full moon.
- 6 I got back to the hotel at 3 a.m.
- 7 It was a magical evening – an Argentinian woman with a Greek man on the other side of the world in those dark streets, with the lights from the Parthenon up on the hill!

### Mehmet from Turkey

- 1 It was last year. I was in Istanbul, where I live.
- 2 I was with my friends. It was my best friend's birthday.
- 3 I wore a black T-shirt and blue jeans.
- 4 We went to a great place called Cezayir. It's an old building with a great restaurant. We had dinner, and after dinner we had a coffee in the bar. Then we went to the beach at Florya and we had a swim. It was fantastic. The water wasn't very clean, but we didn't mind!
- 5 It was a hot night and the sea was really warm.
- 6 After our swim, we were tired and decided to go back, but I couldn't find my car keys! We went back to the beach and we looked everywhere, but it was too dark. In the end I left the car at the beach and I went home in my friend's car! I got home really late, at 5.00 in the morning.
- 7 It was a memorable night because we had a fantastic dinner and swim, but also because I lost the car keys – it was my father's car and he was really angry!



## 2 GRAMMAR past simple: irregular verbs

- a Look at the article again and find the past tense of these irregular verbs.

can	could	/kʊd/
come	_____	/keɪm/
feel	_____	/fi:l/
get	_____	/gɒt/
go	_____	/wɛnt/
have	_____	/hæd/
hear	_____	/hɪəd/
know	_____	/nju:/
leave	_____	/left/
lose	_____	/lɒst/
meet	_____	/met/
see	_____	/si:/
speak	_____	/spi:k/
teach	_____	/ti:t/
wear	_____	/wɔ:/

- b (358)) Listen and check. Practise saying the verbs.
- c ► p.136 Grammar Bank 7C. Learn more about past simple irregular verbs and practise them.
- d Work in pairs. A re-read the text about Maria Julia, B re-read the text about Mehmet.
- e ► **Communication** *A night to remember* A p.103 B p.108. Test your partner's memory. Whose night do you think was more fun?

## 3 LISTENING

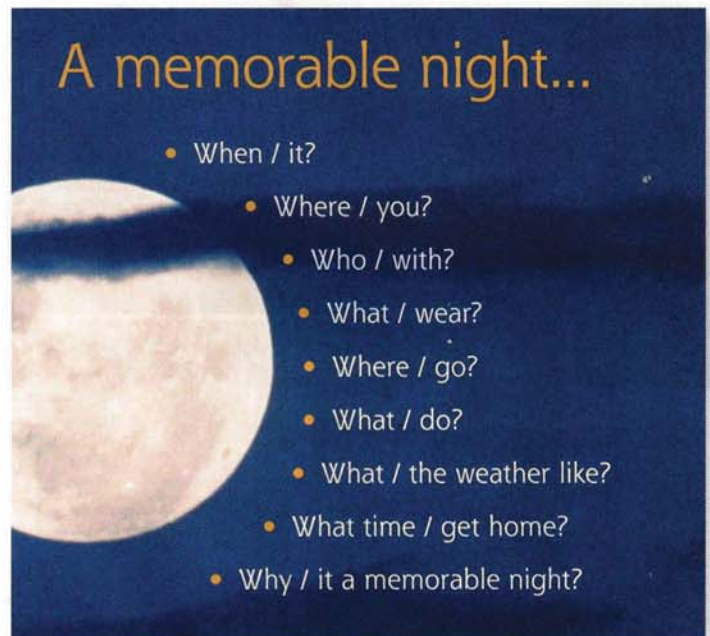
- a You are going to listen to David from Spain talking about his memorable night. Look at photo C from 1. Where was he? Why was it a memorable night?
- b (360)) Listen and check.
- c Listen again. Correct the information.
- 1 It was on 11th August. *No, it was on 11th July.*
  - 2 He was in Buenos Aires.
  - 3 He watched the match in a restaurant.
  - 4 He wore a Spanish football shirt and a yellow scarf.
  - 5 The match was in the evening.
  - 6 There were a lot of English tourists there.
  - 7 After the match they went to a bar in the city centre.
  - 8 It was quite cold that night.
  - 9 He got to the hotel at 4.00 in the morning.

## 4 VOCABULARY go, have, get

- a Can you remember these phrases about Mehmet? Write *went, had, or got*.
- 1 We \_\_\_ to a great place called Cezayir.
  - 2 We \_\_\_ dinner, and after dinner we \_\_\_ a coffee in the bar.
  - 3 Then we \_\_\_ to the beach at Florya and we \_\_\_ a swim.
  - 4 I \_\_\_ home really late, at 5.00 in the morning.
- b ► p.160 Vocabulary Bank *go, have, get*.

## 5 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

- a Look at the questions in 'A memorable night' below. What words are missing?
- b (362)) Listen and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.



**A memorable night...**

- When / it?
- Where / you?
- Who / with?
- What / wear?
- Where / go?
- What / do?
- What / the weather like?
- What time / get home?
- Why / it a memorable night?

## 6 SPEAKING & WRITING

- a Think about a time you had a memorable night. Look at the questions in 5b and plan your answers.
- b Interview your partner about their night.
- c Write about your night. Answer the questions in 5b, and use the article in 1 to help you.

## 7 (363)) SONG Summer Nights 🎵



# Practical English Getting lost

## 1 A FREE MORNING

- a (364) Rob and Jenny are planning what to do on their free morning. Watch or listen once. What is the problem?



- b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences with a word, a name, or a number.

- 1 Rob suggests that they go \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 He says that they can \_\_\_\_\_ bikes.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ phones \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Rob needs to interview an \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Rob asks if he can do the interview on \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Rob and Jenny arrange to meet at \_\_\_\_\_ o'clock outside the Tate Modern\*.

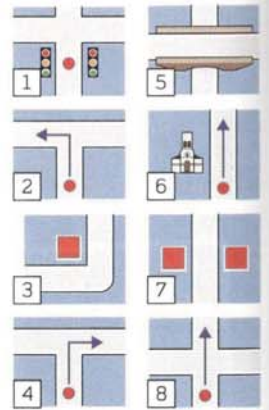
### Cultural note

\* The Tate Modern is a famous art gallery in London.

## 2 VOCABULARY directions

- a Match the words and pictures.

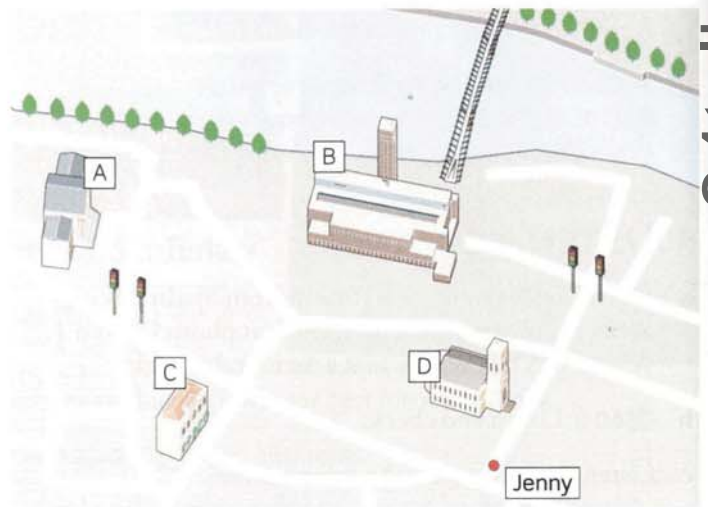
- on the corner /kɔːnə/
- at the traffic lights /ˈtræfɪk laɪts/
- a bridge /brɪdʒ/
- opposite /əˈpəzɪt/
- turn left /tɜːn left/
- turn right /tɜːn raɪt/
- go straight on /streɪt/
- go past (the church) /pɑːst/



- b (365) Listen and check.

## 3 ASKING THE WAY

- a (366) Jenny is trying to find the Tate Modern. Watch or listen. Is it A, B, C, or D?





b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Say	You Hear
Excuse me, please. Where's the Tate Modern?	_____, I don't live here.
Excuse me. Is the Tate Modern near here?	The Tate Modern? It's near here, but I don't know exactly _____. Sorry.
Thank you.	
Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the Tate Modern, please?	Yes, of course. Go straight on. Go _____ the church, then turn _____ at the traffic lights. And it's at the end of the street.
Sorry, could you say that again, please?	Yes, go straight on. Go _____ the church, then turn _____ at the traffic lights. And it's at the end of the street. You can't _____ it!
Thank you.	

c (3.67) Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practise the dialogue with a partner.

**Can you...? or Could you...?**

Can you tell me the way to the Tate Modern?  
Could you say that again, please?

We can use *Can you...?* Or *Could you...?* when we want to ask another person to do something.  
*Could you...?* is more polite.

e In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. **A** ask for directions to building A (the library). Start with *Excuse me, where's...?* **B** give directions. Then swap roles. Ask for directions to building C (the post office).



## 4 JENNY AND ROB GO SIGHTSEEING



a (3.68) Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

- The Millennium Bridge is for cars and people.
- It was the first new bridge over the Thames for 100 years.
- Rob interviewed the engineer last year.
- Jenny doesn't like Shakespeare.
- Daniel phones and invites Jenny to dinner.
- Jenny accepts the invitation.
- There's a gift shop on the top floor of the Tate Modern.
- The Tate Modern was a power station until 1981.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or Daniel?

**Social English phrases**

What a view!  
What would you like to visit?  
What is there to see?  
We could go to the Globe Theatre.  
Would you like to meet for lunch?  
That's really nice of you.  
Maybe another time?  
Yes, of course.

d (3.69) Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.



**Can you...?**

- ask for and understand directions
- give simple directions
- ask someone to do something in a polite way



Did you hear anything during the night?

No, I didn't. I was very tired.

# 8A A murder story

## 1 READING

- a Read the back cover of a murder story. Then cover it and look at the photographs. Can you remember who the people are?

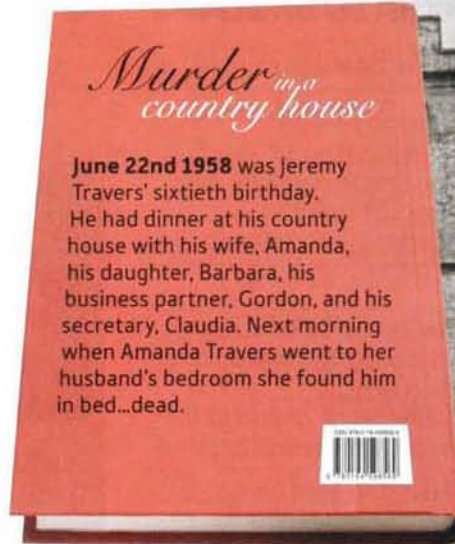
Who's Amanda? She's Jeremy's wife.

- b (4.2)) Read and listen to the story. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the F sentences.

- 1 Somebody killed Jeremy between 12.00 a.m. and 2.00.
- 2 The inspector questioned Amanda in the living room.
- 3 Jeremy went to bed before Amanda.
- 4 Amanda and Jeremy slept in the same room.
- 5 Somebody opened and closed Amanda's door.
- 6 Amanda got up at 7.00.
- 7 Amanda didn't love Jeremy.

- c Look at the highlighted irregular verbs in the story. What are the infinitives?

1 was = be



*Claudia*

*Gordon*

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

past simple verbs

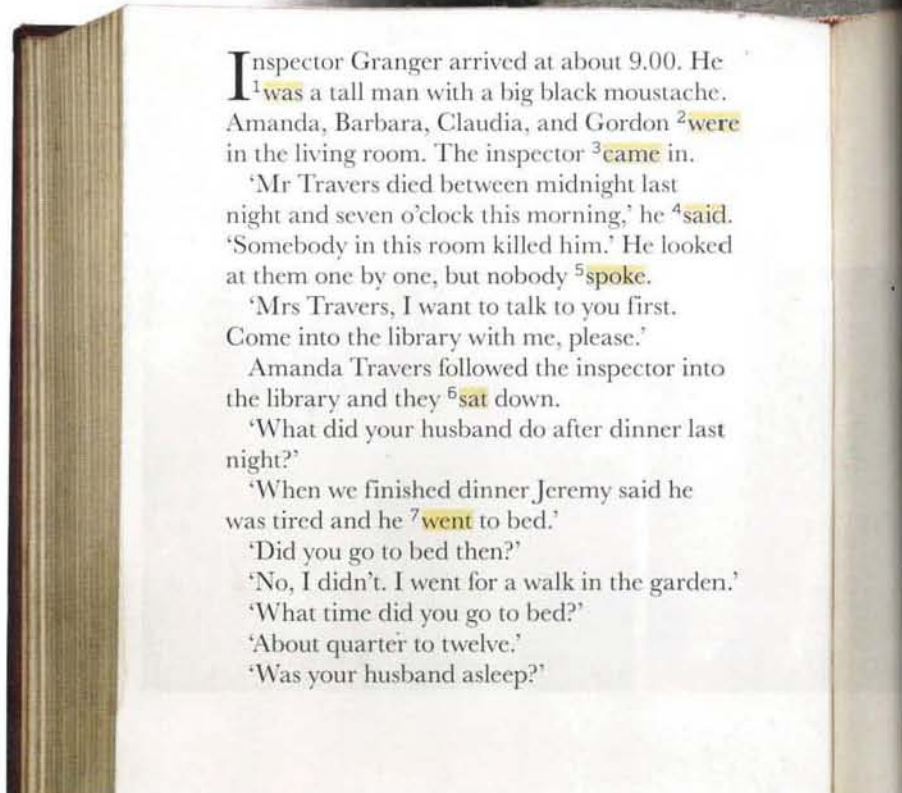
- a (4.3)) Listen to the pronunciation of these verbs in the past simple.

thought could found heard read  
 said saw took taught wore

- b (4.4)) Now match the verbs in a with a word below which rhymes. Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

book \_\_\_\_\_ bed \_\_\_\_\_  
 round \_\_\_\_\_ four \_\_\_\_\_  
 bird \_\_\_\_\_ port \_\_\_\_\_  
 good \_\_\_\_\_

- c (4.5)) Find and underline nine past simple regular verbs in the story. How do you pronounce them? Listen and check.







### 3 LISTENING

a (4 6, 7, 8)) Listen to the inspector question Barbara. Write the information in the chart. Listen again and check. Then do the same for Gordon and Claudia.

	Amanda	Barbara	Gordon	Claudia
What did they do after dinner?	She went for a walk.			
What time did they go to bed?	11.45.			
Did they hear anything?	Jeremy's door opened and closed.			
Possible motive?	She hated him.			

- b Compare your chart with a partner. Who do you think was the murderer: Amanda, Barbara, Gordon, or Claudia? Why?
- c (4 9)) Now listen to what happened. Who was the murderer? Why did he / she kill Mr Travers? Were you right?

### 4 GRAMMAR past simple: regular and irregular

a Cover the story and look at these verbs. Are they regular or irregular in the past simple? Write the past simple form  and  for each verb.

come kill close speak sleep sit hate walk

came  didn't come

- b (4 10)) Listen and check.
- c ► p.138 Grammar Bank 8A. Learn more about past simple regular and irregular verbs and practise them.
- d ► p.165 Irregular verbs Tick (✓) the irregular verbs you know. Choose three new ones and learn them.

### 5 SPEAKING

► Communication Police interview A p.104 B p.108. Interview robbery suspects. Are they telling the truth?

'I don't know, inspector. We...we <sup>8</sup>slept in separate rooms. But I <sup>9</sup>saw that his door was closed.'

'Did you hear anything when you were in your room?'

'Yes, I <sup>10</sup>heard Jeremy's bedroom door. It opened. I <sup>11</sup>thought it was Jeremy. Then it closed again. I <sup>12</sup>read in bed for half an hour and then I went to sleep.'

'What time did you get up this morning?'

'I <sup>13</sup>got up at about 7.15. I <sup>14</sup>had breakfast and at 8.00 I <sup>15</sup>took my husband a cup of tea.

I <sup>16</sup>found him in bed. He was...dead.'

'Tell me, Mrs Travers, did you love your husband?'

'Jeremy is...was a difficult man.'

'But did you love him, Mrs Travers?'

'No, inspector. I hated him.'



G *there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns*

V *the house*

P */eə/ and /ɪə/, sentence stress*

Is there  
a garage?

Yes, there is.

# 8B A house with a history

## 1 VOCABULARY the house

- Read the advertisement for a house to rent. Would you like to rent it? Why (not)?
- Cover the advertisement. What can you remember about the house?
- With a partner, think of three things you can usually find in a bedroom, a bathroom, and a living room.
- p.161 Vocabulary Bank *The house.*

### TO RENT

#### Beautiful country house.

Very quiet. Six bedrooms, four bathrooms, large garden. Five miles from Witney. Perfect family house.

#### LOW PRICE.



## 2 LISTENING

- (4 13)) Kim and Leo are a young couple from the USA. They want to rent the house in 1. Cover the dialogue and listen to their conversation with Barbara. Which three rooms in the house do they go into?
- Listen again and complete the dialogue.

K The garden is wonderful, I love it.

L Is there a <sup>1</sup>garage?

B Oh yes, there's a big garage over there. Let's go inside the house.

This is the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. There are five rooms on this floor, the kitchen, the <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, the living room, the <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, the library...

L Wow! There's a library, Kim!

B This is the living room.

L I love the furniture, the old sofa, the armchairs, the <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_...

B And this is the <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. It's very big, as you can see.

K Is there a dishwasher?

B No, there isn't. It's an old house, you see.

L Never mind. I think it's lovely. Is there a <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ downstairs?

B Yes, there's one <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and there are three upstairs.

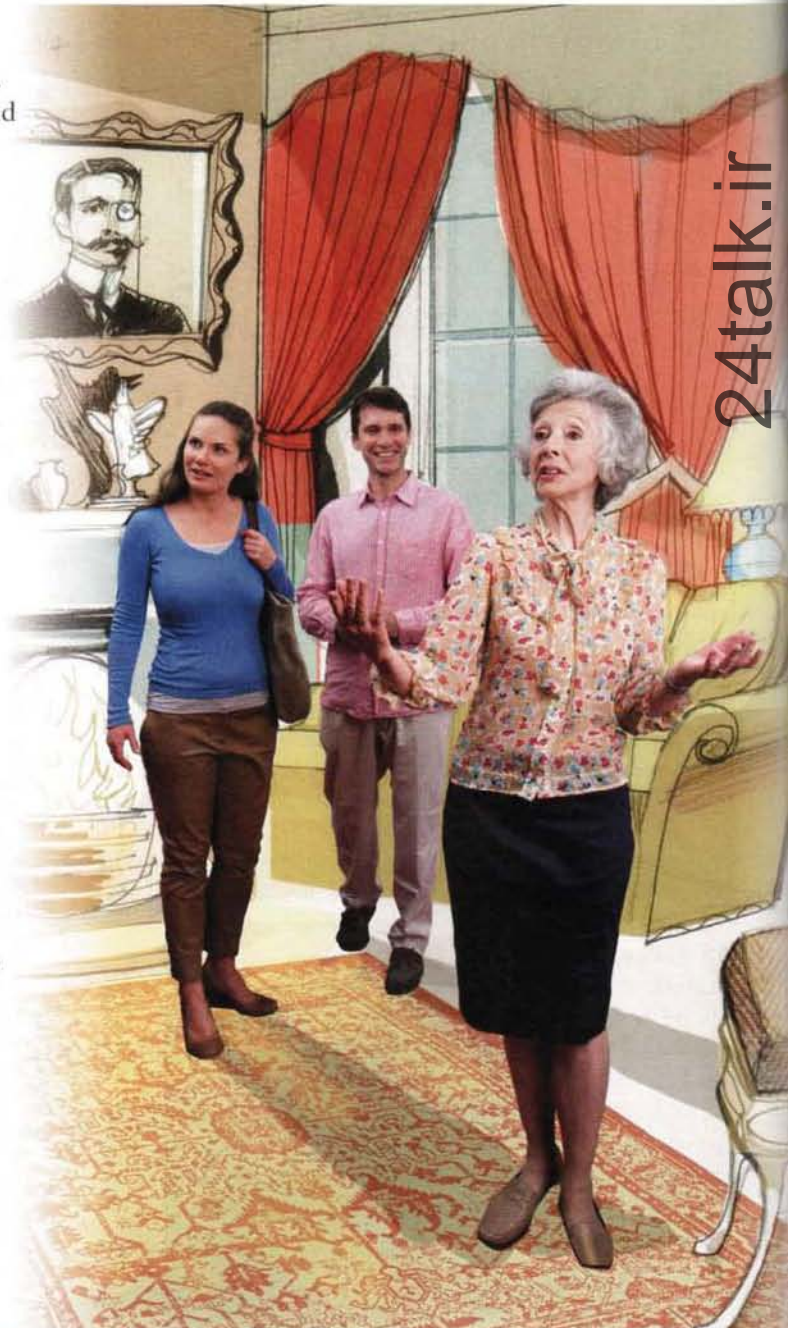
K Are there any <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with children?

B No, there aren't any neighbours near here. But there are some families with children in the village.

K That's great. You lived in this house, is that right, Mrs...?

B Call me Barbara, dear. Yes, I lived here. A long time ago. Now I live in the village. Let's go <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_...

- (4 14)) Listen. What does Kim say about one of the bedrooms? Whose bedroom was it?



24talk.ir





d (4 15)) Kim and Leo go to the local pub. Listen and answer the questions.

- 1 What do they have to drink? Why?
- 2 What does the barman tell them...?
  - a about what happened in the house
  - b about Barbara
  - c about what happened to the house later
- 3 What do Kim and Leo decide to do?

### 3 GRAMMAR *there is / there are*

a In groups of three, practise the dialogue in 2b. Then complete the chart.

	singular	plural
+	There's a garden.	There ___ some families in the village.
-	There ___ a dishwasher.	There aren't any neighbours.
?	___ a garage?	___ any neighbours?

b What's the difference between...?

- 1 There are **three** families in the village.
- 2 There are **some** families in the village.

c ► p.138 Grammar Bank 8B. Learn more about *there is / there are* etc. and practise it.

### 4 PRONUNCIATION

/eə/ and /ɪə/, sentence stress

a (4 17)) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	chair	
	ear	

b Put the words in the right place.

beer careful dear wear here they're  
near stairs there we're hear where

c (4 18)) Listen and repeat the words.

d (4 19)) Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

- A Are there any stairs?  
B Yes, they're over there.

- A Is there a bank near here?  
B Yes.  
A Where?  
B There's one in the square.

e Practise the dialogues with a partner.

f Ask your partner questions with *Is there a...in your...?* *Are there any...in your...?* Give more information in your answers if you can.

TV books plants pictures  
mirror fireplace lamps  
kitchen bedroom bathroom  
dining room living room

Is there a TV in your kitchen? No, there isn't, but there's one in the living room.

### 5 SPEAKING

a Look at the questionnaire **Your home**. Interview a partner. Ask for and give more information if you can.

Your home



Do you live in a house or a flat?

How old is it?

How big is it?

How many bedrooms are there?  
bathrooms?

Is there a study?  
a garden or a balcony?  
a garage?  
central heating or air conditioning?

Do you like it? Why (not)?

b Draw a simple plan of your living room. Show the plan to your partner and describe the room.

This is the living room. It's quite big and it's very light.  
There are two sofas and an armchair.

### 6 WRITING

► p.114 Writing Describing your home.

Write a description of your house or flat.

7 (4 20)) SONG House of the Rising Sun



G there was / there were  
V prepositions: place and movement  
P silent letters

Were there any pictures on the wall?

Yes, there was a picture of a lady.

## 8C A night in a haunted hotel

### 1 READING

- a Do you believe in ghosts? Are there buildings in your town / city that people think are haunted?
- b Read the text once and find out:
- Who are the ghosts in the two hotels?
  - Tick (✓) the things that happen in the hotels:  
a  people hear strange noises    d  lights go on and off  
b  people see somebody            e  things fall on the floor  
c  doors open and close            f  people feel that somebody is watching them
- c Look at the highlighted words in the text related to hotels and guess their meaning.
- d Would you like to stay in one of these hotels? Why (not)?

## WOULD YOU LIKE TO STAY IN A HAUNTED HOTEL?

THERE ARE MANY HOTELS IN BRITAIN THAT PEOPLE SAY ARE HAUNTED. IF YOU ARE FEELING BRAVE, YOU CAN STAY THE NIGHT IN ONE OF THESE HOTELS.

### ENGLAND GOSFORTH HALL INN

Gosforth Hall is a small hotel in Cumbria in the north of England, built in 1658. People say the hotel has the ghost of a Catholic priest. He usually appears in Room 11. There is a secret tunnel that goes from behind the fireplace in the hotel lounge to Room 11. In 17th-century England, Catholic priests used the tunnel to hide from Protestants.

The owner of the hotel, Rod Davies, says: 'I didn't believe in ghosts before I came here, but strange things happen in the hotel. One guest woke up in the middle of the night and saw a tall man standing next to his bed. He checked out the next morning.' Rod's wife says: 'One night a lot of books fell off a shelf in the lounge. And sometimes when I am working I feel that someone is watching me, but when I turn round nobody is there.'

**GHOST HUNTERS:** Ask for Room 11

[www.gosforthhallhotel.co.uk](http://www.gosforthhallhotel.co.uk)

### SCOTLAND COMLONGON CASTLE

Comlongon is a 15th-century castle in a small village near Dumfries in south-west Scotland. The castle is haunted by the Green Lady, the ghost of Lady Marion Carruthers. Lady Marion was unhappy because she was married to a man she did not love, and in 1570 she jumped from the castle walls and killed herself. Many strange things happen in the hotel – doors open and close, and lights go on and off in empty rooms. An American couple once opened the door of their room and saw a young woman sitting on the bed. They left because they thought they were in the wrong room. In fact it was their room, but when they came back the room was empty.

**GHOST HUNTERS:** Ask for The Carruthers suite.

[www.comlongon.com](http://www.comlongon.com)



## 2 VOCABULARY prepositions: place and movement

- a Look at the pictures of the ghosts from the hotel. Where is the woman sitting? Where is the man standing?



- b ➤ p.162 Vocabulary Bank Prepositions: place and movement.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION silent letters



### Silent letters

Some English words have a 'silent' letter, e.g. in *cupboard* /'kʌbəd/ you don't pronounce the *p*.

- a (4 23)) Listen and cross out the 'silent' letter in these words.

building castle could friend ghost guest  
half hour know listen talk what write

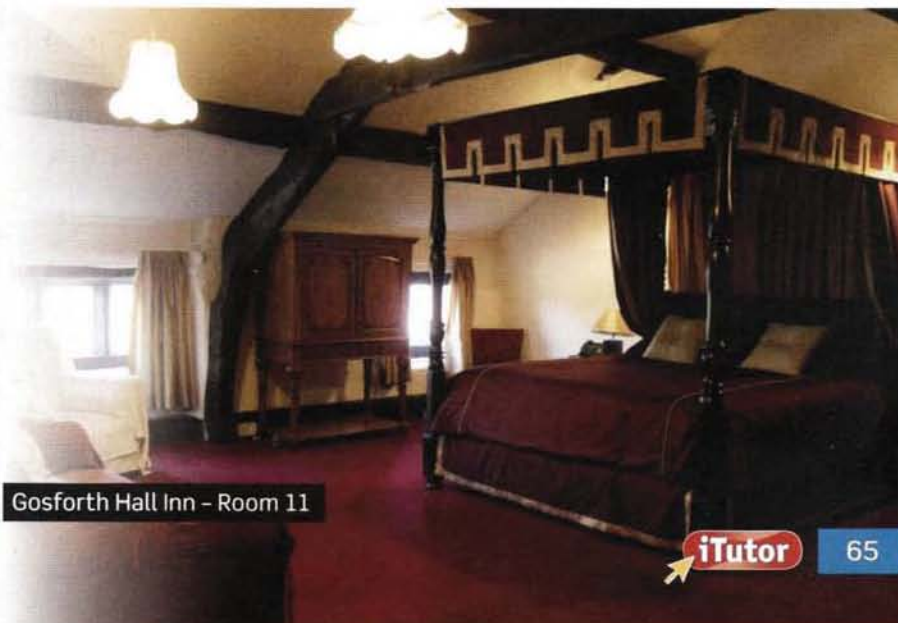
- b Practise saying the words.

## 4 LISTENING

A British newspaper, the *Sunday Times*, sent one of its journalists, Stephen Bleach, to Gosforth Hall Inn. They asked him to spend the night in Room 11.

- a (4 24)) Listen to **part 1** of Stephen's night. Correct the information in these sentences.

- 1 He arrived at Gosforth Hall early in the evening.
- 2 There were four other guests in the hotel.
- 3 He talked to one of the guests.
- 4 He had dinner in the bar.
- 5 He went to his room at 11.00.
- 6 Room 11 was on the first floor.
- 7 The room was quite small.
- 8 There was a TV and a remote control.
- 9 There was a horror film on TV.
- 10 He went to sleep at the end of the film.



Gosforth Hall Inn - Room 11

- b (4 25)) Do you think Stephen saw the ghost? Listen to **part 2** and find out. Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 Did he wake up during the night?  
If yes, what time?
- 2 Did anything strange happen?  
If yes, what?
- 3 Did he 'feel' the ghost?
- 4 Was he frightened?  
 very  a little  not at all
- 5 Would he like to go back?  
Why (not)?

## 5 GRAMMAR

*there was / there were*

- a (4 26)) Complete the sentences from the listening with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*. Then listen and check.

- 1 There \_\_\_\_\_ many other guests in the hotel.
- 2 There \_\_\_\_\_ only three.
- 3 There \_\_\_\_\_ an old TV on a table.
- 4 There \_\_\_\_\_ a remote control.

- b ➤ p.138 Grammar Bank 8C. Learn more about *there was / there were* and practise it.

## 6 SPEAKING

### ➤ Communication *The Ghost Room*

A p.104 B p.109. Look at the picture of another haunted hotel room for one minute. Try to remember what there was in the room.



# 7&8 Revise and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

- The Brontë sisters \_\_\_\_\_ all writers.  
a was b were c is
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ Shakespeare born?  
a was b were c is
- \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets expensive?  
a Was b Were c Did
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a good film on TV last night.  
a watched b watch c watches
- They \_\_\_\_\_ at Stamford Bridge stadium.  
a didn't arrived  
b don't arrived  
c didn't arrive
- \_\_\_\_\_ you see the football match last night?  
a Did b Do c Was
- We \_\_\_\_\_ to Istanbul three years ago.  
a go b were c went
- When \_\_\_\_\_ in Los Angeles?  
a you live  
b did you lived  
c did you live
- I \_\_\_\_\_ you at the party last night.  
a didn't saw b didn't see c don't saw
- What time \_\_\_\_\_ home?  
a did you get b you did get c you got
- \_\_\_\_\_ a big table in the living room.  
a There are b There is c It is
- How many bedrooms \_\_\_\_\_?  
a there are b are there c are they
- There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ pictures on the walls.  
a any b some c a
- \_\_\_\_\_ only three guests in the dining room.  
a There was b There were c There is
- How many people \_\_\_\_\_ in the hotel?  
a there were  
b was there  
c were there

## VOCABULARY

a Complete the professions with *-er, -or, -ist, or -ian*.

- 1 act \_\_\_\_\_ 3 paint \_\_\_\_\_ 5 scient \_\_\_\_\_  
2 art \_\_\_\_\_ 4 music \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the phrases with *have, go, or get*.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ a good time 4 \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ an email 5 \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ away for the weekend

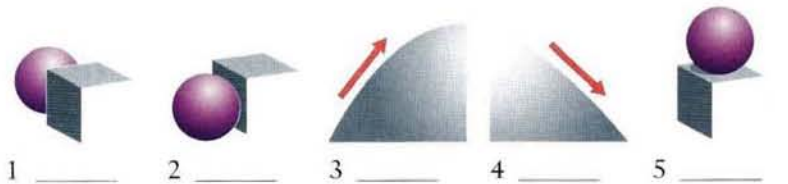
c Complete the sentences with *back, by, in, out, or to*.

- 1 I went \_\_\_\_\_ with my friends on Saturday night.  
2 They went home \_\_\_\_\_ car.  
3 What time did you get \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant?  
4 I was born \_\_\_\_\_ 1982.  
5 After lunch I went \_\_\_\_\_ to work.

d Label the pictures.




e Write the prepositions.



## PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

- 1 /ɪd/ wanted waited lived ended  
2  saw wore thought could  
3  heard met said left  
4  near there wear stairs  
5  hall heating hour behind

b Underline the stressed syllable.

- 1 mu|si|cian 2 a|go 3 ye|ster|day 4 be|tween 5 fire|place

24talk.ir



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

- a Read the text and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).
- 1 Arthur Conan Doyle was Scottish, but he worked in England.
  - 2 He started writing stories about Sherlock Holmes at university.
  - 3 Conan Doyle lived at 221b Baker Street in London.
  - 4 In 1893 he didn't want to write more Sherlock Holmes stories.
  - 5 Sherlock Homes didn't die in Austria.
  - 6 Sherlock Holmes is very popular today.
- b Look at the **highlighted** words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

## The man who wrote SHERLOCK HOLMES

Arthur Conan Doyle was born in Edinburgh on 22nd May 1859. He studied medicine at Edinburgh University and as a student he began writing **short stories**. He became a doctor in the south of England, but at first he didn't have many **patients**. So in his free time he began writing stories about a brilliant **detective**, Sherlock Holmes. Conan Doyle based Holmes' personality on his professor at university. Holmes, who lives at 221b Baker Street in London, is famous for solving difficult **crimes** and mysteries using his great intelligence. The Sherlock Holmes stories soon became very popular, but in 1893 Conan Doyle became tired of his detective, and decided to **'kill'** him. In *The Final Problem* Sherlock Holmes and his **enemy**, Professor Moriarty, die when they fall off the Reichenbach Falls in Switzerland. But people were very unhappy to lose Sherlock Holmes, and there were letters in many newspapers asking for him to **come back**.

Finally, in 1901 Conan Doyle brought him back in a new story, *The Hound of the Baskervilles*. He explained that Holmes did not die in the Reichenbach Falls, but miraculously **survived**.

Conan Doyle died on 7th July 1930, but 'Sherlock Holmes continues to live both in the stories and in many film versions. Recently he was the inspiration for the character Dr Gregory House in the TV series *House*.



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

**4 28**) In the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.



Heba

Polly

Alison

Sarah Jane

Ben

- 1 Heba \_\_\_\_\_.  
a has family in New York  
b lives in Egypt  
c was born in Cairo
- 2 Polly went out for dinner on \_\_\_\_\_.  
a Friday b Saturday c Sunday
- 3 Alison likes her kitchen because \_\_\_\_\_.  
a it's really big  
b she can eat there  
c it's practical for cooking
- 4 Sarah Jane can see \_\_\_\_\_ from her study.  
a a tree in her garden  
b the sea  
c her mother's house
- 5 Yesterday evening Ben \_\_\_\_\_.  
a went out to the pub  
b worked at home  
c went to bed early

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✓) the box if you can do them.

### Can you...?

- 1  say three things about a famous (dead) person from your country
- 2  say five things you did last week, using past time expressions, e.g. *last night, yesterday, (three) days ago*, etc.
- 3  say where and when you were born
- 4  ask your partner five questions about yesterday

**Short films** Edinburgh Castle  
Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.



What did you have for lunch?

A pizza and some salad.

# 9A What I ate yesterday

## 1 VOCABULARY food

- a What food words do you know in English? With a partner, try to think of five words.
- b ➤ p.163 Vocabulary Bank *Food*.

## 2 READING

- a Look at the photos which show meals that three people – a model, a boxer, and a writer – ate yesterday. Guess which person ate which meal.
- b Read three articles from a series *What I ate yesterday* in *The Times* newspaper. Check your answers to a.
- c Read the articles again. Answer the questions with **M** (the model), **B** (the boxer), or **W** (the writer). Who...?
- 1 doesn't like eating during the day
  - 2 doesn't eat anything between meals
  - 3 didn't have any home-cooked food for lunch or dinner
  - 4 had fruit for dessert at lunchtime
  - 5 never eats meat
  - 6 didn't drink any alcohol yesterday
  - 7 had a drink and a snack before dinner
  - 8 doesn't eat anything for breakfast
  - 9 has a strange breakfast habit
- d With a partner, look at the highlighted words related to food and guess their meaning. Use the photos to help you.
- e Whose food do you prefer? Why?



## What I ate yesterday

### Laura Bailey *model*

**Breakfast** I never miss breakfast! I had some cereal and fruit, and a piece of toast. I'm a bit unusual because I have tea and coffee in the morning. I don't mind in which order, but I need to have both.

**Lunch** I was at my studio all day, so I got **takeaway** vegetarian sushi from a restaurant called *Itsu*. I became a vegetarian 20 years ago and now I can't imagine living any other way.

**Dinner** I picked up my children from school and we had a snack – cheese and biscuits. In the evening I went to my favourite pizzeria, and I had a vegetarian pasta dish, and two glasses of white wine.



### James deGale *boxer*

**Breakfast** I woke up and went running for an hour and a half, then I came home and had a cup of tea and some porridge. Then I went to the gym and trained.

**Lunch** I had a bowl of pasta with chorizo and bacon in tomato sauce with cheese on top, and an apple and an orange. I have an important fight soon, so my diet has to be very strict now. Three meals a day, and no snacks.

**Dinner** I had a **grilled chicken breast** and vegetables – mushrooms, **sweetcorn** and tomatoes. My mum made it – she's a fantastic cook.



### Lionel Shriver *writer*

**Breakfast** I had an enormous cup of espresso coffee with some milk and a little cream. It's all that I need and gives me energy for the whole day.

**Lunch** I don't eat lunch. I don't understand people who can eat three meals a day. How do they find the time to do anything else?

**Dinner** First I had a glass of sherry and a bowl of **popcorn**. Then I had grilled fish with some brown rice and vegetables – peppers and onions. For dessert I had a piece of chocolate cake. I drank red wine.



**sushi** a typical Japanese dish made with rice  
**porridge** hot cooked cereal which British people often have for breakfast  
**chorizo** a kind of Spanish sausage



### 3 GRAMMAR

countable / uncountable nouns; *a / an, some / any*

a Look at the photos. Complete the gaps with *a, an, or some*.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ strawberry
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ tomato
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ rice
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ biscuits
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ onion



b **p.140 Grammar Bank 9A.**

Learn more about countable / uncountable nouns, etc. and practise them.

c Make sentences with *there's a / an / some...* and *there are some...* Choose food and drink from **p.163 Vocabulary Bank Food**.

### 4 PRONUNCIATION

the letters *ea*

a How is *ea* pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

bread breakfast eat healthy ice cream  
meat peas steak tea

 tree	 egg	 train

b **(4.31)** Listen and check. Practise saying them. Which is the most common pronunciation of *ea*?

### 5 SPEAKING

a Make a food diary for yesterday. Write down what food and drink you had. Use **Vocabulary Bank Food p.163** to help you.

**Breakfast** a cup of coffee, some cereal

b Work in pairs. Tell each other what you had yesterday. Was it very similar or very different?

For breakfast I had a cup of coffee and some cereal.

### 6 LISTENING

a What cookery programmes do you have on TV in your country? What do you think of them? Do you sometimes cook their recipes?



b **(4.32)** Listen to part 1 of a TV cooking competition called *Get ready! Cook!* where contestants have to cook a starter, a main course, and a dessert. Answer the questions.

- 1 How many ingredients are there in the bag?
- 2 How long do the contestants have to cook their dishes?
- 3 Name *three* of the basic ingredients they can use.

c **(4.33)** Listen to part 2. Complete the dishes that Jack and Liz make.

Jack	Judge's comments
1 _____ and _____ soup	
2 _____ breasts filled with cream _____	
3 pancakes with _____ sauce	
Liz	Judge's comments
1 carrot and _____ salad with _____ dressing	
2 _____ with creamy _____ sauce	
3 _____ and _____ mousse	

d **► Communication** *Get ready! Cook!* p.109 Look at the photos of their dishes. Whose dishes do you prefer?

e **(4.34)** Listen to part 3. What does the judge say about Jack and Liz's dishes? Who wins?

f In pairs, think of one of your favourite dishes. Write the ingredients you need. Tell your partner.



G quantifiers: *how much / how many, a lot of, etc.*

V food containers

P /j/ and /s/

How much salt does it have?

Not much.

# 9B White gold

## 1 VOCABULARY food containers

a (4 35)) Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.



- a bottle     a box     a can     a carton     a jar     a packet     a tin

b (4 36)) Listen and write five phrases.

c Make phrases with the containers and the words below. (a packet of biscuits)

biscuits chocolates Coke crisps juice jam milk salt sugar tuna

## 2 GRAMMAR

quantifiers: *how much / how many, a lot of, etc.*

a Look at the pictures at the bottom of the page. Then ask and answer questions about the food.



How much sugar is there in dark chocolate? I'm not sure. I think there's a lot.

b > Communication Sugar and salt p.109. Check your answers to a.

c Complete the sentences with a food or drink from a.

- 1 There **isn't any** salt in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 There's **a little** sugar in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 There's **quite a lot of** salt in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 There's **a lot of** sugar in \_\_\_\_\_.

d > p.140 Grammar Bank 9B. Learn more about quantifiers and practise them.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION /j/ and /s/

a (4 38)) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	sugar fish		salt sweets
shower		snake	

b (4 39)) Put the words in the right column. Listen and check.

cereal cinema delicious fresh  
information centre rice crisps reception  
salad science shopping special sure

c (4 40)) Listen and repeat the dialogue. Then practise it with a partner.

- A Are you sure this is salt? I think it's sugar.  
B No, I'm sure it's salt. I put some in the rice salad.  
A Let's taste the salad... Aargh. It was sugar. I told you.  
B Sorry!

How much sugar?

How much salt?





## 4 SPEAKING

- Read the questionnaire and complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.

How much sugar and salt do **YOU** have a day?

### Sugar

- \_\_\_\_\_ spoonfuls of sugar do you have in your tea or coffee?  
a three or more b two c one d none
- \_\_\_\_\_ cans of cola (or other fizzy drinks) do you drink a day?  
a three or more b two c one d none
- \_\_\_\_\_ fruit or fruit juice do you have a day?  
a a lot b quite a lot c not much d none
- \_\_\_\_\_ sweets or biscuits do you eat a week?  
a a lot b not many c very few d none

### Salt

- How often do you add salt to your food at the table?  
a always b often c sometimes d never
- \_\_\_\_\_ takeaway food do you eat?  
a a lot b quite a lot c not much d none
- \_\_\_\_\_ bread do you eat a day?  
a a lot b quite a lot c a little d none
- \_\_\_\_\_ cheese do you eat a week?  
a a lot b quite a lot c a little d none

- b In pairs, interview your partner. Do you think he / she needs to eat less sugar and salt?
- c Work in pairs. **A** say how much you eat / drink of the things below. **B** respond and ask for more information. Then say if you think **A** has a healthy diet or not. Swap roles.

fish meat potatoes vegetables chocolate  
fast food eggs pasta olive oil butter

I eat a lot of fish. } How often do you eat fish?

## 5 READING

- Read the magazine article *White Gold*. With a partner, complete the facts with *sugar* or *salt*.
- Read the article again, and highlight five new words or phrases. Compare with a partner.
- Did any of the facts surprise you?

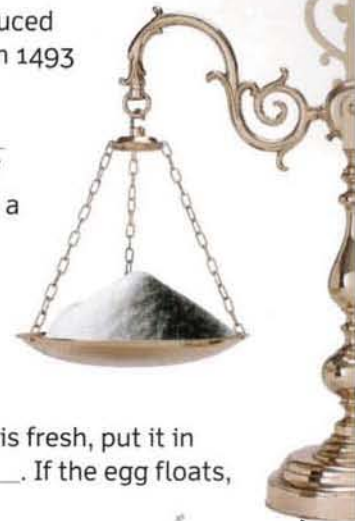
## 6 4 41))) SONG Sugar Sugar 🎵

# WHITE GOLD

## FASCINATING FACTS ABOUT SUGAR AND SALT

At different times in history, both sugar and salt were called 'white gold', because they were so expensive and difficult to get. But there are many more interesting facts about sugar and salt...

- Christopher Columbus introduced <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the New World in 1493 on his second voyage.
- If you eat too much <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (about 1 gram per kilogram of weight), you can die. This was a method of ritual suicide in ancient China.
- Salzburg in Austria was called 'the city of <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_' because of its mines.
- If you want to check if an egg is fresh, put it in a cup with water and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. If the egg floats, it isn't very fresh.
- In Brazil fuel made from <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is used in cars instead of petrol.
- Americans eat or drink about 2.25 kilos of <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a month.
- <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is used to make glass, washing powder, and paper.
- <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ kills some bacteria, and so helps food to last longer, which is why bacon and cheese contain a lot.
- If you put <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ into a vase of flowers, the flowers last longer.
- <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ only contains energy. It doesn't contain any vitamins or minerals.
- *Sure* and <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ are the only two words in the English language that begin with 'su' and are pronounced 'sh'.
  - We need to have a little <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in our diet, but not more than 6g a day, which is about one teaspoon.





# 9C Quiz night

## 1 VOCABULARY high numbers

a Read three questions from a radio quiz show. Choose the right answer for each question.

- 1 What is the approximate population of the UK?  
 a 42,000,000  
 b 52,000,000  
 c 62,000,000
- 2 How many calories are there in a Big Mac?  
 a 670  
 b 485  
 c 305
- 3 How far is it from New York City to Los Angeles?  
 a about 4,000 km  
 b about 2,500 km  
 c about 5,000 km

b (4.42)) Listen and check. How do you say the three answers?

c ► p.148 Vocabulary Bank *Days and numbers*. Do part 4.

d Look at the numbers below. Correct the mistakes.

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| 175       | a hundred seventy-five                 |
| 2,150     | two thousand and one hundred and fifty |
| 3,009     | three thousand nine                    |
| 20,000    | twenty thousands                       |
| 3,000,000 | three millions                         |

e (4.44)) Listen and write the ten numbers you hear.

f Answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 What's the population of your town / city?
- 2 What's the population of your country?
- 3 How far is it from your town / city to...?  
 a London  
 b New York

## 2 LISTENING

a (4.45)) What quiz shows are popular in your country? Listen to the introduction to a quiz show called *Quiz Night*. Answer the questions.

- 1 How long do the contestants have to say if the sentences are true or false?
- 2 How much do they win if they get...?  
 a the first answer right \_\_\_\_\_ c the third answer right \_\_\_\_\_  
 b the second answer right \_\_\_\_\_ d all eight answers right \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If they get an answer wrong, how much do they lose?
- 4 What can a contestant do if they are not sure of the answer?

b In pairs, look at the sentences from *Quiz Night*. Write T (true) or F (false).

c (4.46)) Listen to a contestant on *Quiz Night*. Check your answers to b. How much does she win?

d Listen again for why the answers are true or false. Write down any numbers you hear.

# QUIZ NIGHT

- 1 The North Pole is colder than the South Pole.
- 2 Carrots are sweeter than tomatoes.
- 3 A proton is heavier than an electron.
- 4 The White House is bigger than Buckingham Palace.
- 5 Oranges are healthier than strawberries.
- 6 Female mosquitoes are more dangerous than male mosquitoes.
- 7 In judo a green belt is better than a blue belt.
- 8 Hepatitis A is worse than hepatitis B.



### 3 GRAMMAR comparative adjectives

- a Look at the adjectives in the quiz sentences. In pairs, answer the questions.

#### Using adjectives to compare two things:

- 1 What two letters do you put at the end of one-syllable adjectives (e.g. *cold*)?
- 2 Why is *big* different?
- 3 What happens when an adjective ends in *-y*?
- 4 What word do you put in front of long adjectives (e.g. *dangerous*)?
- 5 What's the comparative form of *good* and *bad*?
- 6 What's the missing word?

China is bigger \_\_\_ Japan.

- b ► p.140 Grammar Bank 9C. Learn more about comparative adjectives and practise them.

### 4 PRONUNCIATION

/ə/, sentence stress

- a (4 48)) Listen to the eight quiz sentences from 2. How is *than* pronounced? How is *-er* pronounced at the end of a word?
- b Listen again and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

### 5 SPEAKING

► Communication Quiz Night A p.105 B p.110. Play Quiz Night.

### 6 READING

- a Read about two quiz shows. Do you have the same or similar shows in your country? Do you enjoy them?
- b Now read about Pat Gibson. Why is he 'the best quiz contestant in the country'?
- c Read the article again and complete it with a verb from the list in the past simple.

answer be become get have  
help know phone win

- d With a partner, look at the highlighted words in the texts related to quiz shows and guess their meaning.
- e Would you like to be a contestant on a quiz show? Which one?

### Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?

A quiz show where contestants can win a maximum prize of one million pounds if they can answer multiple choice questions which become more and more difficult. Contestants have three possibilities of getting help: they can ask the audience, reduce the four choices to two, or they can phone a friend.



### Mastermind

A quiz programme where contestants answer questions on a specialist subject which they choose, and then answer general knowledge questions.



## Q Who is the best quiz contestant in the country?

### A Pat Gibson

Last night Pat Gibson <sup>1</sup> had \_\_\_ a big party after winning *Mastermind* on BBC TV. But it <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_ not his first celebration party. Last April Mr Gibson <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_ £1 million in *Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?* and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_ the first person in Britain to win both quizzes.

In the *Mastermind* final Pat, a 43-year-old computer programmer who is obsessed with **trivia**, beat five other contestants, including a university lecturer. During the **competition** he <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_ questions on several specialist subjects, for example film director Quentin Tarantino and science fiction author Iain M Banks.

In *Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?* he <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_ to the final question and still had the possibility of phoning a friend for help. He was sure that he <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_ the answer, but he <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_ Mark Kerr, a friend, to double-check it. Mark was happy to help him – six weeks before, Pat <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_ Mark to win £250,000 on the same show as **his** phone-a-friend!





# Practical English At a restaurant

## 1 AN INVITATION TO DINNER

a (4 49)) Watch or listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

- 1 Jenny and Rob worked last night.
- 2 Jenny wants to read Rob's article.
- 3 It's Eddie's birthday today.
- 4 Rob and Daniel invite Jenny to dinner.
- 5 Jenny says yes to Rob.



b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

c (4 50)) Read the information box. Listen and repeat B's phrases.

○ Responding to what somebody says

- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| 1 A It's my birthday today.              | B Happy birthday!      |
| 2 A We won the cup!                      | B Congratulations!     |
| 3 A I have my driving test tomorrow.     | B Good luck!           |
| 4 A I got all my English homework right. | B Well done!           |
| 5 A I didn't get the job.                | B Oh dear! Never mind. |

d (4 51)) Listen and respond with phrases from the box.

))) I got two goals this afternoon. ( Well done!

## 2 VOCABULARY

understanding a menu

a Complete the menu with **Main courses**, **Desserts**, or **Starters**.

b (4 52)) What do the **highlighted** words mean? How do you pronounce them? Listen and check.

c Cover the menu. In pairs, try to remember what's on the menu.

### Luigi's

2 courses **£15.00**

3 courses **£22.50**

1

Onion **soup**  
Mozzarella and tomato salad

2

Grilled chicken breast  
with vegetables  
Mushroom ravioli  
**Seafood** risotto

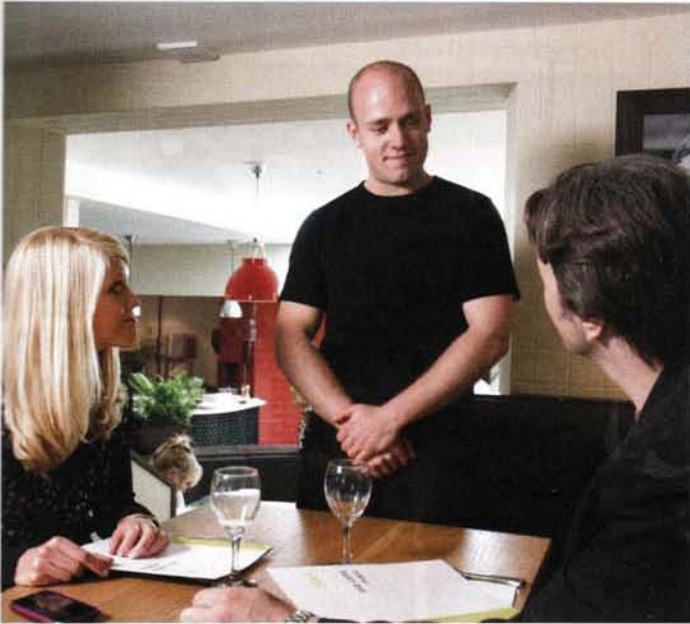
3

**Home-made** vanilla ice cream with  
hot chocolate **sauce**  
**Fresh** fruit salad  
Tiramisu

24talk.it



## 3 ORDERING A MEAL



- a (4.53) Watch or listen to Jenny and Daniel having dinner. What food do they order?
- b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

» You Hear	You Say
Good evening. Do you have a _____?	Yes, a table for two. My name's Daniel O'Connor.
Come this _____, please.	
Are you ready to _____?	Yes. The soup and the mushroom ravioli, please. I'd like the mozzarella salad and then the chicken, please.
What would you _____ to drink?	Just water for me. A bottle of mineral water, please.
_____ or sparkling?	Is sparkling OK? Yes, sparkling.
Thank you, sir.	Thank you.

- c (4.54) Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.
- d Practise the dialogue in groups of three.
- e In groups of three, roleplay the dialogue. A is the waiter. Start with *Good evening. Do you have a reservation?* B and C go to Luigi's. Then swap roles.

## 4 THE END OF THE MEAL

- a (4.55) Watch or listen and answer the questions.
- 1 How does Jenny normally celebrate her birthday?
  - 2 Do they order dessert or coffee?
  - 3 What does Daniel say to Jenny after the meal?
  - 4 How does Jenny answer?
  - 5 Does Barbara give Jenny good news or bad news?
  - 6 Where does Jenny want to go after the meal?



- b Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: Jenny, Daniel, the waiter, or Barbara?

### Social English phrases

Nothing special.	The same for me, please.
Would you like a dessert?	Go ahead.
Not for me, thanks.	Good news?
A decaf espresso.	Could I have the bill, please?

- c (4.56) Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?
- d Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?

use common phrases, e.g. *Good luck, Congratulations*, etc.

understand a menu

order a meal



What's the oldest building in your town?  
 I'm not sure. Probably the cathedral.

# 10A The most dangerous road...

## 1 VOCABULARY places and buildings

a Complete these famous tourist sights with a word from the list. Do you know what countries / cities they are in?

Bridge Castle Mountains Square Street

- 1 Trafalgar \_\_\_\_\_ 4 Edinburgh \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 The Golden Gate \_\_\_\_\_ 5 The Rocky \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 Wall \_\_\_\_\_

b (5 2)) Listen and check.

c ➤ p.164 Vocabulary Bank Places and buildings.

## 2 GRAMMAR superlative adjectives

a Look at the photos. Do you know what countries they are in?

b (5 4)) With a partner, complete the captions with a phrase from the list. Listen and check.

the biggest the busiest the most dangerous  
 the longest the most popular the widest

c Complete the chart with superlatives from b.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
big	bigger	the biggest
long	longer	
wide	wider	
busy	busier	
dangerous	more dangerous	
popular	more popular	

d What letters do you add to a one-syllable adjective to make a superlative? What words do you put before longer adjectives?

e ➤ p.142 Grammar Bank 10A. Learn more about superlative adjectives and practise them.

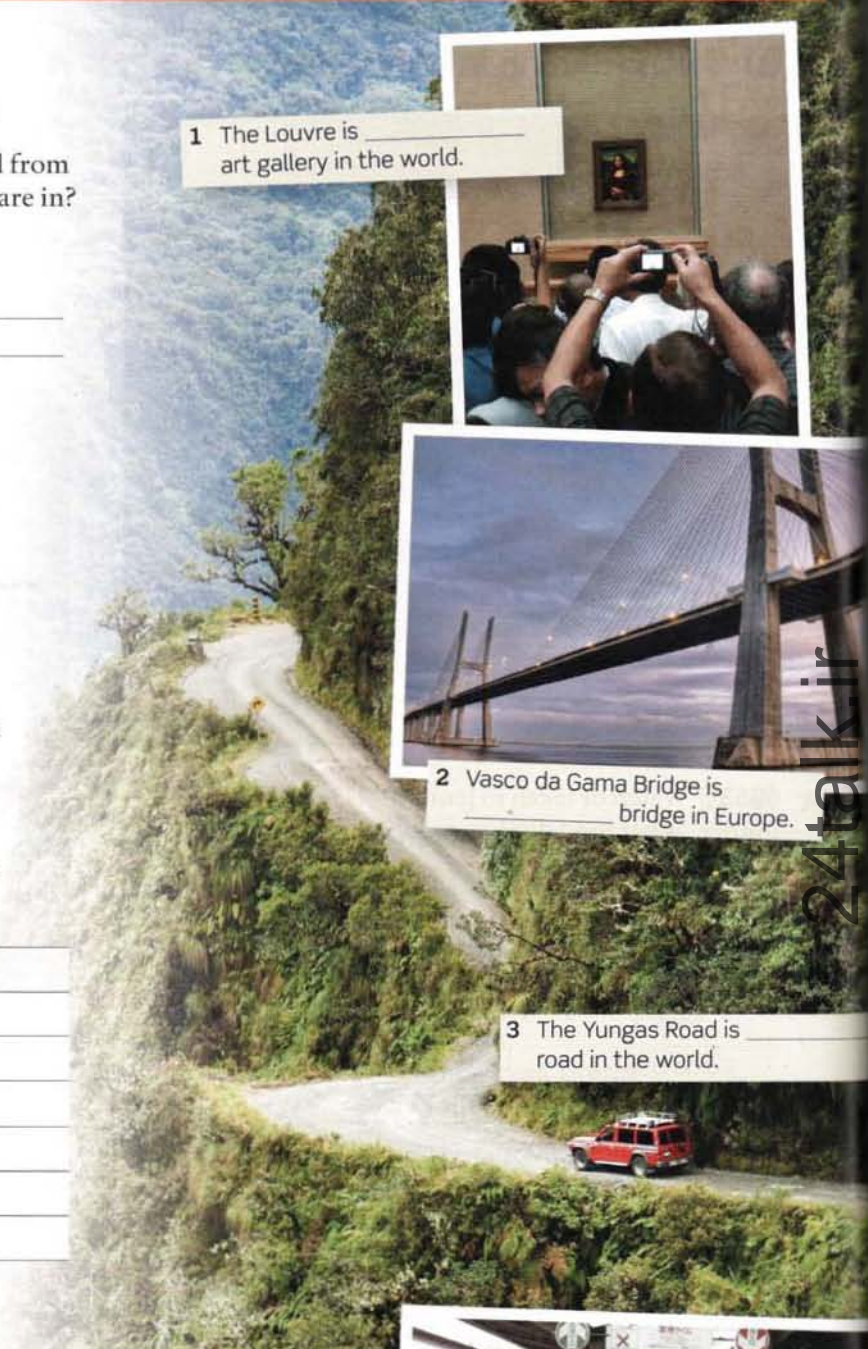
1 The Louvre is \_\_\_\_\_ art gallery in the world.



2 Vasco da Gama Bridge is \_\_\_\_\_ bridge in Europe.



3 The Yungas Road is \_\_\_\_\_ road in the world.



5 Avenida 9 de Julio in Buenos Aires is \_\_\_\_\_ street in the world.



4 Tiananmen Square is \_\_\_\_\_ square in the world.



6 Shinjuku Station in Tokyo is \_\_\_\_\_ railway station in the world.





### 3 PRONUNCIATION consonant groups

a (5.6)) Listen and repeat the adjectives in 2c.



#### Consonant groups

Words which have two or three consonants together, e.g. *fastest*, can be difficult to pronounce.

b (5.7)) Listen and repeat these superlatives.

the most **expensive**      the most **exciting**      the **oldest**  
the most beautiful      the **smallest**

c ► **Communication** *Cities quiz A p.105 B p.110.*  
Complete the questions with superlative adjectives.  
Then ask and answer the questions with a partner.

### 4 READING

- a Read the article below and look at the photo. Would you like to go cycling there? Why (not)?
- b Read the article again. Then cover the text and answer the questions in pairs.
- 1 Where is the North Yungas Road?
  - 2 Why is it called 'Death Road'?
  - 3 How wide is the road?
  - 4 Why is it popular with cyclists?
  - 5 When is the most dangerous time of year to go?
  - 6 Why is the road similar to London Bridge and the Sydney Opera House?
  - 7 Why didn't Marte enjoy cycling on the Yungas Road?
- c In pairs, guess the meaning of the **highlighted** words.
- d Is cycling popular in your country / region? Is there an area that is very popular for cyclists? Why?

### 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Work in pairs.

A Imagine you are a tourist in your town (or nearest big town) who only speaks English. Ask B, who lives in the town, questions 1–5: Get as much information as you can.

B You live in your town. A is a tourist who doesn't speak your language. Answer his / her questions (1–5). Explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!

Then swap roles for questions 6–10.

What's the most beautiful square?

I think the Piazza Navona.

Where's that?

It's in the centre, near the Pantheon. It has...

- A**
- 1 What's \_\_\_\_\_ square? (beautiful)
  - 2 What's \_\_\_\_\_ way to get around? (easy)
  - 3 What's \_\_\_\_\_ museum? (interesting)
  - 4 What's \_\_\_\_\_ time of year to visit? (good)
  - 5 What's \_\_\_\_\_ place to eat typical food? (nice)

- B**
- 6 What's \_\_\_\_\_ building? (old)
  - 7 What's \_\_\_\_\_ place to go for a day trip? (nice)
  - 8 What's \_\_\_\_\_ area to walk at night? (dangerous)
  - 9 Where's \_\_\_\_\_ place to buy a souvenir? (good)
  - 10 What's \_\_\_\_\_ area to go at night? (popular)

b Imagine you want to advertise your town / city for tourists. Write an advert using superlative adjectives. Add photos if you can.

*Come to Kielce. It isn't the biggest or the most beautiful town in Poland, but it has the cleanest air and the most delicious cheesecake...*

## Cycling on the most dangerous road in the world

High in the Andes, the North Yungas Road goes from La Paz, the highest capital city in the world, to Coroico in the Yungas region of Bolivia. The road is only about three metres wide and the Coroico river lies 200 metres **below**. Bolivians call it 'El Camino de la Muerte' (Death Road) because of the number of accidents, and in 1995 it was officially declared 'the most dangerous road in the world.'

'One mistake and you are dead.'

Since a new road opened in 2006, there are **fewer** buses and lorries on the old road. But now thousands of mountain bikers come from all over the world to have the most exciting ride of their lives. They start at La Cumbre, 4,700 metres **above** sea level, and go down to 1,525 metres, travelling

at **nearly** 80 km an hour down the **narrow** road. During the **rainy** season, from December to March, only **experienced** cyclists can take part, but some die every year on the road. So, why do people do it?

Andrew Jagoo, 26, from Melbourne, said after finishing the ride, 'If you go to London, you have to see London Bridge and if you go to Sydney, you have to see the Opera House and if you go to Bolivia, you have to do the most dangerous road.'

Marte Solberg, 22, from Norway said, 'A lot of people said it was **fun**, but I was scared of falling over and dying. I was worried because I had no experience of mountain biking. One mistake and you are dead. I asked myself a thousand times, "Why am I doing this?"'





# 10B CouchSurf round the world!

## 1 LISTENING

- a Read the dictionary definition for *couch*, and look at the CouchSurfing website. What do you think CouchSurfing is?

**couch** /kaʊtʃ/ *noun* **1** a long comfortable seat for two or more people to sit on (= a sofa) **2** the bed in a doctor's room for a patient to lie on

The screenshot shows the CouchSurfing website interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Login', 'Surf / Host', 'Community', 'CouchRequests', 'Messages', 'Share', and 'About'. Below that, a banner reads 'CouchSurfing is a worldwide network of travelers and the local communities they belong to'. The main content area displays a user profile for Artur Dorner, a 27-year-old PhD student from Vienna, Austria, who speaks German and English and loves meeting people. Below his profile, there are other user profiles partially visible, including one for Judit Hetzke.

- b (5.8)) Listen to part of a radio travel programme. Were you right? How does CouchSurfing work?
- c (5.9)) Now listen to the speaker give more details about CouchSurfing. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
- 1  CouchSurfers usually pay their host a little money.
  - 2  You need to create a profile on the website.
  - 3  When you find a person with a bed, you call them to agree the days you want to stay.
  - 4  You have to offer other people a bed in your house or flat.
  - 5  CouchSurfing is safe because you can read what other travellers say about the host.
  - 6  The host always shows their guests their city.
  - 7  You can CouchSurf all over the world.
- d Would you like to go CouchSurfing? Why (not)? Would you like to have a stranger to stay in *your* house? Why (not)?

## 2 GRAMMAR be going to (plans)

- a (5.10)) A British newspaper asked their travel journalist to try CouchSurfing. Cover the dialogue and listen to the interview. What are his plans?

- b Listen again and complete the gaps with a verb.

**Presenter** Tell me about your plans, Philip.

**Journalist** I'm going to 1 \_\_\_\_\_ round Europe – to Paris, Vienna, and Budapest.

**P** How long are you going to 2 \_\_\_\_\_ in each city?

**J** Just one night in each place.

**P** Who are you going to 3 \_\_\_\_\_ with?

**J** In Paris I'm going to stay with a guy called Théo, in Vienna with a guy called Artur, and in Budapest with a woman called Judit.

**P** Are you going to 4 \_\_\_\_\_ on a couch?

**J** Only in Vienna, luckily. In the other places I have a bed.

**P** How are you going to 5 \_\_\_\_\_?

**J** I'm going to 6 \_\_\_\_\_ by train.

**P** What are you going to 7 \_\_\_\_\_ in each place?

**J** I don't just want to see the typical tourist sights. I hope I'm going to 8 \_\_\_\_\_ things that aren't in a guide book.

**P** Well, have a good trip and good luck!

- c Look at the highlighted sentences in the dialogue. Then answer the questions.

1 What form is the verb after *going to*?

2 Do we use *going to* to talk about the past, the present, or the future?

- d ► p.142 Grammar Bank 10B. Learn more about *be going to* (plans) and practise it.

- e Number the future time expressions 1–8.

tonight  tomorrow night

next year  today

tomorrow morning  next week

next month  tomorrow afternoon

- f (5.12)) Listen and check. Then listen again and repeat. Make four true sentences about your plans.



### 3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

sentence stress

- a (5 13)) Listen and repeat the highlighted phrases in 2b. Copy the rhythm.

I'm going to travel round Europe.

- b ► **Communication** What are you going to do? A p.105 B p.110. Interview a partner about his / her plans.

### 4 READING

- a Read the journalist's blog for his trip. Did he have a good time?
- b Read the blog again and tick (✓) the things that were a problem.
- 1 He didn't arrive at the right time at one of the houses.
  - 2 He couldn't understand the host's friends very well.
  - 3 One host didn't have much time to show him the city.
  - 4 One of the hosts didn't speak very good English.
  - 5 He did something wrong in one of the flats.
  - 6 He didn't like the food that one of the hosts cooked.
- c Read the blog again and look at the highlighted verb phrases. With a partner, say what you think they mean.

#### Paris: Théo

I met Théo at the Place D'Italie metro station. He's 24 and his English is good. At his apartment I met his flatmate, Roger. They were very friendly. They made me a delicious dinner of crêpes and ham and eggs. Then they took me to Footsie, a great bar near the Opéra. Some friends came and in the end the conversation changed to French. That was difficult for me and I got tired. Finally, we went to a party near Montmartre. It was great! Lots of friendly people. I went back to Théo's flat on the back of his bicycle.



#### Vienna: Artur

I stayed with Artur, a biochemistry student. He was friendly, but when I arrived I wanted to have a bath and I forgot to turn off the tap. The bathroom was full of water. Oops!



#### Budapest: Judit

I got off the train at the wrong station so I arrived late at Judit's flat. She wasn't very happy. She's a journalist for the Hungarian channels MTV and TV2 and she's an incredibly busy woman. In the afternoon she took me with her to a shopping centre to help her choose a dress for a party. That was a bit surreal! In the evening we had dinner together in the Castro bar in the city centre. Next day I flew home to London, tired but happy. I'm definitely going to do it again!

### 5 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

holidays

- a Complete the holiday phrases using a verb from the list.

go have see stay show

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel / with a friend / for a week
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_ somebody round your town / city
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the sights
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ by train (bus, plane) / back home
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ a good time / nice meals
- b In pairs, plan a holiday. You are going to visit **three** cities in the same continent. Your holiday can be a maximum of **ten** days.
- Answer the questions:
- What cities are you going to visit?
  - Where are you going to stay?
  - How are you going to get there?
  - How long are you going stay in each city?
  - What are you going do in each place?

#### Making suggestions

Let's (go to...) I prefer to (go to...)  
Why don't we (go to...)? That's a good idea.

- c Change partners. Tell each other about your holiday plans.

We're going to go to South America - to Buenos Aires, Rio, and Montevideo. We're going to CouchSurf because we don't have much money...

- d Do you prefer your new partner's plans? Would you like to change partners and go with him / her?

### 6 WRITING

- p.115 **Writing** A formal email. Make a reservation in a Bed and Breakfast.





# 10C What's going to happen?

## 1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Do people in your country go to fortune-tellers, or use fortune-telling sites on the internet? Do you believe in fortune-telling?

b Match the fortune-teller's cards and verb phrases.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> become famous     | <input type="checkbox"/> get a lot of money  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> get a new job     | <input type="checkbox"/> have a surprise     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> get married       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> be lucky |
| <input type="checkbox"/> meet somebody new | <input type="checkbox"/> travel              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> fall in love      | <input type="checkbox"/> move house          |



## 2 READING & LISTENING

a (5.14) Read and listen to PART 1 of a story. In pairs, answer the questions.

- Who does Jane want to see?
- Who is going to tell her about her future? Why?
- Why couldn't she see the man very well?

b (5.15) Listen to part 2. Then, with a partner, complete the information.

- Jane has a problem with her \_\_\_\_\_.
- She chooses \_\_\_\_\_ cards.
- Her first card means she's going to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jane asks the fortune-teller if she's going to \_\_\_\_\_ with her boyfriend.



c (5.16) Read and listen to PART 3. In pairs, answer the questions.

- What's the second card? What does it mean?
- Why is this a problem for Jane?
- What's her third card? What does it mean?
- Who's Jim? Where did Jane meet him?
- What do you think the fourth card is going to be?

d (5.17) Listen to part 4. Then, with a partner, complete the information.

- Her fourth card means she is going to \_\_\_\_\_ her boyfriend and go away with Jim to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Very soon they are going to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jane asks if she is going to be \_\_\_\_\_ and the fortune-teller says \_\_\_\_\_.
- She pays the fortune-teller £\_\_\_\_\_.



e (5.18) Read and listen to PART 5. In pairs, answer the questions.

- Who was the fortune-teller?
- Why did he pay Madame Yolanda £100?
- What's the fifth card? What do you think is going to happen?

24talk.ir



# It's written in the cards

## PART 1

'Come in,' said a voice. Jane Ross opened the door and went into a small room. There was a man sitting behind a table.

'Good afternoon,' said Jane.

'I want to see Madame Yolanda, the fortune-teller.'

'Madame Yolanda isn't here today,' said the man. 'But don't worry. I'm going to tell you about your future. What questions do you want to ask?' Jane looked at the fortune-teller. She couldn't see him very well because the room was very dark.

## PART 3

He turned over the second card.

'Mm, a house. A new house. You're going to move, very soon, to another country.'

'But my boyfriend works here. He can't move to another country.'

'Let's look at the next card,' said the fortune-teller. He turned over the third card.

'A heart. You're going to fall in love.'

'Who with?' asked Jane.

'Let me concentrate. I can see a tall dark man. He's very attractive.'

'Oh, that's Jim,' said Jane.

'Who's Jim? Your boyfriend?'

'No. Jim's a man I met at a party last month. He's an actor, from New York. He says he's in love with me. It was his idea for me to come to Madame Yolanda.'

'Well, the card says that you're going to fall in love with him.'

'Are you sure?' asked Jane. 'But what about my boyfriend?'

'Let's look at the fourth card,' said the fortune-teller.

## PART 5

The fortune-teller stood up. He turned on the light. At that moment an old woman came in. 'So, what happened?' she asked.

'It was perfect! She believed everything,' said Jim.

'I told you, I'm a very good actor. She was sure I was a fortune-teller!'

He gave the woman £100.

'That's Jane's £50 and another £50 from me. Thanks very much, Madame Yolanda. Bye.'

Madame Yolanda took the money. The fifth card was still on the table, face down. She turned it over. It was the plane. She looked at it for a minute and then she shouted:

'Wait, young man! Don't travel with that girl – her plane is going to...'

But the room was empty.

## 3 GRAMMAR *be going to* (predictions)

a Look at these two sentences. Which one is a plan? Which one is a prediction?

- 1 She's going to be very lucky.
- 2 She's going to go on holiday next week.

b ► p.142 Grammar Bank 10C. Learn more about *be going to* (predictions) and practise it.

c Write four predictions, about the **weather, sport, your town / country, and you**. Use *I think...going to...*

*I think it's going to snow tonight.*

d Compare your predictions with a partner. Do you agree?

## 4 PRONUNCIATION the letters oo

### 🔍 The pronunciation of oo

oo can be pronounced /u/ (e.g. *book* /bʊk/) or /u:/ (e.g. *spoon* /spu:n/). Use your dictionary to check the pronunciation of new oo words.

Be careful, *room* can be pronounced /rom/ or /ru:m/.

a (5 20) Listen to the two sound words. Can you hear the difference in the vowel sound?



bull



boot

b (5 21) Listen and write the words in the right column.

afternoon	book	choose	cook	food	good
look	moon	school	soon	spoon	too
took					

c (5 22) Listen and check.

d Practise saying the sentences.

*Good afternoon.*

*It's too soon!*

*Look at the moon!*

*Is the food good?*

*He's a good-looking cook.*

## 5 SPEAKING

Roleplay fortune-telling.

A Look at the ten cards in 1. Secretly, number the cards 1–10 in a different order.

B Choose five numbers 1–10.

A Predict B's future using those cards.

B Ask for more information. Then change roles.

A *I'm going to tell you about your future. Your first card is a star. You're going to become famous. You're going to be on TV...*

B *Great! What programme?*

## 6 (5 23) SONG Fortune Teller 🎵



# 9 & 10 Revise and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

- There's \_\_\_\_\_ milk in the fridge.  
a some b any c a
- We don't need \_\_\_\_\_ bread.  
a no b any c a
- How \_\_\_\_\_ fruit do you eat a day?  
a much b many c a lot
- I drink \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.  
a much b a lot c a lot of
- A How much salt do you eat?  
B \_\_\_\_\_.  
a A little b A few c Much
- A Is there any sugar?  
B No, sorry, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a there isn't none  
b there isn't any  
c there isn't some
- Tea is \_\_\_\_\_ coffee in this café.  
a cheaper that  
b more cheap than  
c cheaper than
- Oranges are \_\_\_\_\_ than bananas.  
a more healthy b healthier c healthier
- My English is \_\_\_\_\_ than my brother's.  
a gooder b better c more good
- This is \_\_\_\_\_ size that we have.  
a the biggest b the most big c the bigger
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant in the city.  
a the baddest b the worst c the worse
- What's \_\_\_\_\_ park in your town?  
a the most beautiful  
b most beautiful  
c the more beautiful
- \_\_\_\_\_ to buy my ticket this afternoon.  
a I go b I going c I'm going
- \_\_\_\_\_ to get married?  
a Do they going  
b They are going  
c Are they going
- I think \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.  
a it snows  
b it's snowing  
c it's going to snow

## VOCABULARY

a Circle the word that is different.

- |                |           |          |               |
|----------------|-----------|----------|---------------|
| 1 breakfast    | lunch     | dessert  | dinner        |
| 2 strawberries | mushrooms | onions   | peas          |
| 3 orange juice | sugar     | milk     | mineral water |
| 4 crisps       | chips     | tomatoes | potatoes      |
| 5 fruit salad  | ice cream | cake     | chicken       |

b Match the food and the containers.

beer fruit juice rice tomatoes honey

- |                  |                     |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1 a can of _____ | 3 a jar of _____    | 5 a carton of _____ |
| 2 a tin of _____ | 4 a packet of _____ |                     |

c Circle the right word or phrase.

- It's *a hundred twenty* / *a hundred and twenty* miles from here.
- The population is about three *million* / *millions*.
- That new *department shop* / *department store* is great.
- Let's have a drink at one of those cafés in the *square* / *bridge*.
- Where is the main railway *centre* / *station*?






d Complete the phrases with these verbs.

become fall get go have meet move see show stay

- |                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 _____ in a hotel | 6 _____ the sights in a city     |
| 2 _____ by bus     | 7 _____ somebody new             |
| 3 _____ famous     | 8 _____ somebody round your city |
| 4 _____ married    | 9 _____ a great meal             |
| 5 _____ in love    | 10 _____ house                   |

## PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

-  bread peas meat tea
-  sugar shopping fish sweets
-  cereal carrots salad rice
-  chemist's church chips cheese
-  food cook book good

b Underline the stressed syllable.

- |              |                  |               |
|--------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1 cho colate | 3 su per mar ket | 5 dan ge rous |
| 2 de ssert   | 4 in ter es ting |               |



### CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

- a Read the article once. Then read it again and choose a, b, or c.
- In British supermarkets people now \_\_\_\_\_.
    - buy more healthy food than before
    - buy less healthy food than before
    - buy the same kind of food they bought before
  - When people have a problem or big change in their lives they often \_\_\_\_\_.
    - eat unhealthy food
    - eat a lot
    - eat healthy food
  - If you want to eat healthily, you need to \_\_\_\_\_.
    - spend a lot of money
    - learn to cook
    - stop worrying about what you eat
- b Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

## The British diet - STILL UNHEALTHY

Britain has a problem with obesity (more than 50% of the population are fat or overweight) and the government says we need to have a healthier diet. However, British shoppers are continuing to fill their supermarket baskets with unhealthy food.



A survey of 12 million consumers showed that 44 per cent of people have the same unhealthy eating habits that they had four years ago. The survey also found that shoppers who normally have a very healthy diet start buying junk food, e.g. frozen pizzas, crisps, and cakes, if there is a crisis in their lives, for example divorce, moving house, or losing a job.

Another thing the survey showed is that there is not much difference in price between a healthy shopping basket and an unhealthy one. A typical healthy basket costs, on average, £71.78 compared with £71.18 for an unhealthy one. Martin Hayward, the director of the study said 'Many people don't eat healthily because they worry that healthy food is more expensive, but the survey shows that this is not true. We believe the reason why some people eat unhealthily is because they don't know how to cook so they buy ready-made meals.'

### CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

5 24)) In the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.



- Yvonne Alison Joel Andy Arja
- Yvonne doesn't eat much \_\_\_\_\_.
    - fruit
    - sugar
    - salt
  - Alison is good at cooking \_\_\_\_\_ food.
    - Italian
    - Indian
    - Indonesian
  - Joel likes Barcelona because there are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.
    - great shops
    - great buildings
    - great beaches
  - Andy is going to travel for \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a month
    - three months
    - three weeks
  - When Arja compares the US to her country she doesn't mention \_\_\_\_\_.
    - the food
    - the buildings
    - the weather

### CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✓) the box if you can do them.

- Can you...?
- say what you usually have for breakfast
  - compare your country with the UK in three ways
  - ask your partner four questions with the superlative of the **bold** adjective
    - What's \_\_\_\_\_ present you've ever bought? **expensive**
    - What's \_\_\_\_\_ film you've seen this year? **good**
    - What's \_\_\_\_\_ holiday you've ever had? **bad**
    - What's \_\_\_\_\_ place you've ever been to? **cold**
  - ask your partner what he / she is going to do
    - tonight
    - tomorrow
    - next weekend

Short films the history of the sandwich  
Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.



How do they dress?

They dress very fashionably, but casually.

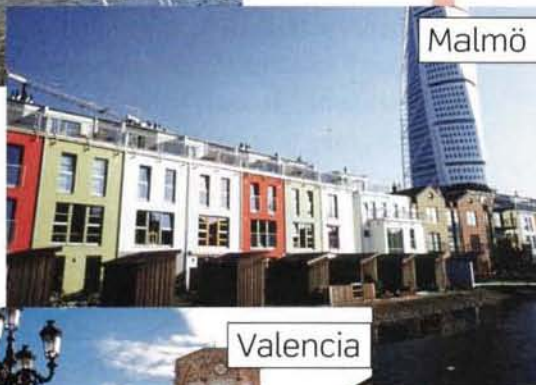
# 11A First impressions

## 1 READING

- a Look at the photos of three cities.  
 Do you know what countries they are in?



Atlanta



Malmö



Valencia

- b Read two blogs on a UK travel website, about people's first impressions of two of these cities. Which two are they?  
 c Read the blogs again. Answer with the names of the cities.

### Where...?

- 1 do people eat a lot of salt and sugar
- 2 do TV programmes have subtitles
- 3 are the days very short in winter
- 4 do a lot of people have bad habits when they drive
- 5 is the city safer than the writer thought
- 6 are the houses colourfully painted
- 7 do you see men looking after young children
- 8 do people speak very slowly

## Travel blogs

16  
September

Moira in \_\_\_\_\_

### The driving

I think people drive quite **dangerously**, which surprised me because I thought they were careful drivers here. They don't drive fast, but people are always on the phone in the car, which you don't often see in the UK nowadays.

### The food

The food can be delicious, but I think people eat very **unhealthily**. In restaurants they often add salt to their food. And they drink litres of Coke! The headquarters of the Coca-Cola company is based here, and they even have a Coca-Cola museum. Once I went to a coffee shop and asked for a double espresso, no milk no sugar. I had to repeat my order three times, because the waitress couldn't understand me. She said people here only ask for lattes and cappuccinos with lots of sugar!

### The people

In general, people are very friendly. The people I'm staying with, who live just outside the city, know all their neighbours really well. They often don't lock their doors, which surprised me because people say it's a dangerous city. They speak **incredibly slowly**, with a strong accent and sometimes I have a problem understanding them.



14  
December

Mark in \_\_\_\_\_

### The weather

It's December – and it gets dark at about 3 p.m., which is depressing! There's a lot of snow at the moment, but all the buses and trains are running perfectly, not like in Britain where everything stops when it snows!

### The houses

All the houses are painted in pretty colours, like red, green and blue, and many houses have a yellow and blue flag. Inside the houses are decorated beautifully with lots of flowers and modern wooden furniture.

### The people

People are friendly and polite, but quite formal. They dress fashionably but casually, and of course you see a lot of very blonde women here. You also see a lot of men who are looking after very young babies. Everybody speaks English really well, maybe because a lot of the TV is in English with subtitles.





d Find words in the blogs which mean:

**Moira**

- Para 1 \_\_\_\_\_ *adv* at this time  
 Para 2 \_\_\_\_\_ *noun* the office where the leaders of an organization work  
 Para 3 \_\_\_\_\_ *verb* close with a key

**Mark**

- Para 4 \_\_\_\_\_ *adj* sth making you feel sad  
 Para 5 \_\_\_\_\_ *adj* made from a tree  
 Para 6 \_\_\_\_\_ *adv* not in a formal way

e Which of the two cities would you prefer to live in? Why?

**2 GRAMMAR** adverbs

a Look at the highlighted adverbs in the blogs. Answer the questions.

- 1 What two letters are added to an adjective to make an adverb?
- 2 Which adverb is the same word as the adjective?
- 3 Which is the adverb from *good*?
- 4 Which four adverbs are describing other adverbs?

b Now look at the highlighted adverbs again in Moira's first paragraph. Complete the rules with *before* or *after*.

- 1 Some adverbs describe how people do things.  
They go \_\_\_\_\_ the verb or verb phrase.
- 2 Some adverbs describe another adverb (or adjective).  
They go \_\_\_\_\_ the adverb (or adjective).

c ► p.144 Grammar Bank 11A. Learn more about adverbs and practise them.

d (5 27)) Listen and say what is happening. Use an adverb.

They're speaking quietly.

**3 PRONUNCIATION** word stress

a Underline the stressed syllable in the adjectives.

Adjectives	Adverbs
dan ge rous	dangerously
po lite	politely
beau ti ful	beautifully
in cre di ble	incredibly
care ful	carefully
fa shio na ble	fashionably
ca su al	casually
per fect	perfectly
un heal thy	unhealthily

b (5 28)) Listen and check. Repeat the adjectives.

c (5 29)) Now listen and repeat the adverbs. Does the stress change?

**4 LISTENING & SPEAKING**

- a (5 30)) Listen to Jemma talking about the third city. In general, is she positive, negative, or neutral about it?
- b Listen again. Then, with a partner, complete Jemma's sentences.



**Eating out**

People spend a lot of time in <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 People who <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ go out to a bar to have <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. They don't have it in their <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 When people go out in big groups, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ all sit at one end of the table and <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at the other.

**The women**

Women here talk very <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and very <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Women dress <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

**Work**

There's a myth that the Spanish don't <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, but I don't think it's <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 People have a <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ lunch break, but they finish work very <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

c Answer the questions in small groups.

**1** In your country or city how do people...?

- dress for special occasions
- treat tourists
- drive
- eat at lunchtime during the week
- speak foreign languages
- behave at sports matches
- decorate their houses

**2** Think of a time when you went to another country or another city / region in your country for the first time. What did you notice about...?

- the people
- the food
- the driving
- the houses
- the weather

**5 WRITING**

Choose two headings from the blogs in 1 or the listening in 4. Write two paragraphs, either about your country or a country you have visited.



Would you like to get a new job?

No, I want to stay where I am.

# 11B What do you want to do?

## 1 READING & SPEAKING

- a Read about the website 43things.com. How does it work?

**43Things** is a website where people write things that they want to do. There are always 43 different ambitions. Some are trivial, some are more serious. Other people respond and write about their experiences and sometimes give advice.

- b Read today's 43 things and responses A–E. Match the responses with five things people want to do. Do you think their advice is good?
- c Complete the phrases from the text with a verb from the list.

become bite choose climb /klaɪm/  
 download go learn spend visit

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ a mountain
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_ on a safari
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ to cook
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ less time on the internet
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the lyrics
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_ five things you really like eating
  - 7 \_\_\_\_\_ a Goth
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_ all the continents
  - 9 \_\_\_\_\_ my nails
- d Cover the verbs and try to remember them.






## 2 GRAMMAR verbs + to + infinitive

- a Look at the highlighted verbs in the text. What's the form of the next verb? Which one is different?
- b ➤ p.144 Grammar Bank 11B. Learn more about verbs + to + infinitive and practise them.

## What do **you** want to do with your life?

### On 43Things today, people want to...

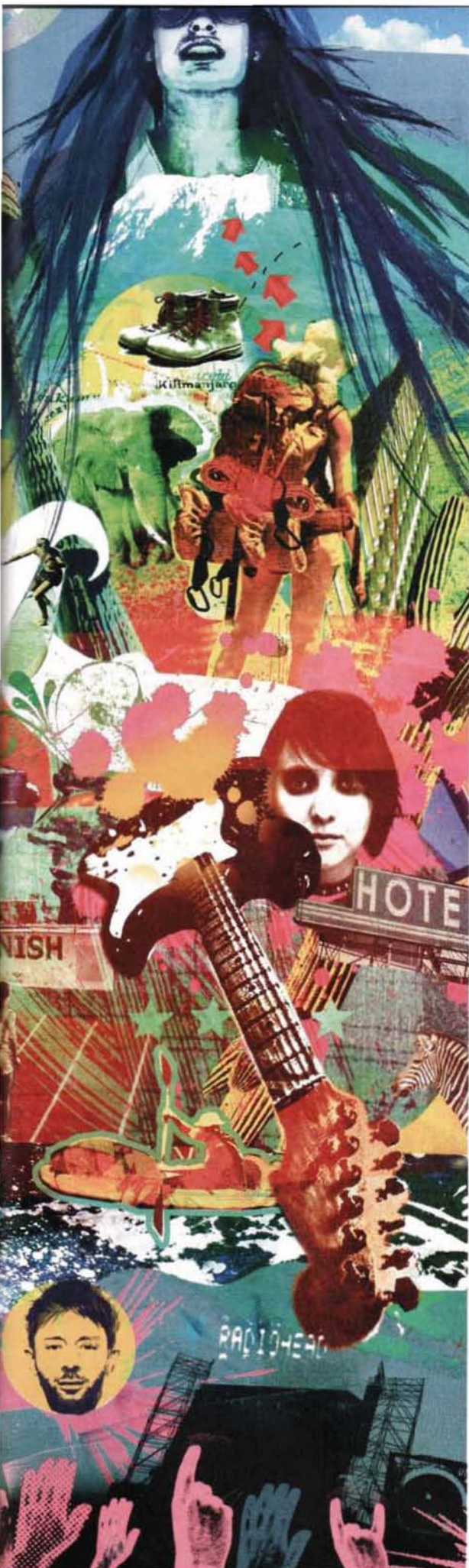
climb Mount Kilimanjaro get up earlier go on a safari  
 get a new job have very long hair have more time for myself  
 learn to cook learn to dance like Shakira make a short film  
 visit all the continents spend less time on the internet write a novel  
 read 12 books a month run a half marathon see Radiohead live  
 learn to speak Italian stop biting my nails get married  
 go to Iceland write a song become a Goth paint my kitchen  
 spend less money on clothes stop eating meat stay awake for 24 hours

- A  Spend less time on Facebook, for example only two hours at the weekend. Stop using Second Life if you use it. (I uninstalled it).
- B  Get a Laura Pausini CD. Download the lyrics to a song and translate them – you can use Google Translate for this. Listen carefully to the pronunciation, and then sing along with her (I sang "In cancellabile").
- C  You just need to stop cutting it! Don't worry about the latest fashions. Go for it!
- D  Choose five things you really like eating (e.g. roast chicken and chocolate cake) and then look at recipes on the internet. Choose the recipes that you'd like to try, preferably ones that aren't too difficult. Make the five things again and again until they're perfect. It isn't difficult, you just need to practise.
- E  Wear black clothes. Be yourself, and listen to bands like The Cult and The Mission.

Second Life® a website which is a free 3D virtual world where users can socialize, create new personalities, and interact with other users  
 Laura Pausini an Italian pop singer, popular in several European and Latin American countries

24talk.ir





### 3 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a (5.32) Listen and repeat the dialogue. Copy the rhythm. How do you pronounce *to*?

A Would you like to go to Iceland?

B No, I wouldn't.

A Why not?

B Because I don't like the cold.

b (5.33) Listen to another dialogue. Complete the missing stressed words.

A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_?

B \_\_\_\_\_, I'd \_\_\_\_\_ to.

A \_\_\_\_\_?

B Because I \_\_\_\_\_ my \_\_\_\_\_. It's \_\_\_\_\_.

c Practise the dialogues with a partner.

d In pairs, choose ten ambitions from **What do you want to do with your life?** Ask your partner questions using *Would you like to...?*

Would you like to climb Mount Kilimanjaro?

Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.

### 4 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Take turns.

A Tell your partner about the things below.

B Respond to what A says. Ask questions.

A Ask *What about you?*

- a country you **want to go to**
- something you **would like to learn to do**
- something you **need to do tomorrow**
- a holiday you **are planning to have soon**
- a famous person you **hope to meet** one day
- a film you **want to see soon**
- a dangerous sport you **would like to try**
- something you **need to buy soon**
- a singer or group you **hope to see** one day

I really want to go to Australia.

Oh, yes? Why Australia?

### 5 WRITING

a Create a class page for **43Things**. Write three things you really want to do. Your teacher will write some of them on the board.

b Read other students' ambitions and choose one that you know something about. Write a response (like the ones in **43Things**) to give advice or talk about your experience.

6 (5.34) **SONG** *Don't Tell Me that it's Over* 🎵



Do men and women use the internet in the same way?

No, they don't. They're very different.

# 11C Men, women, and the internet

## 1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION the internet

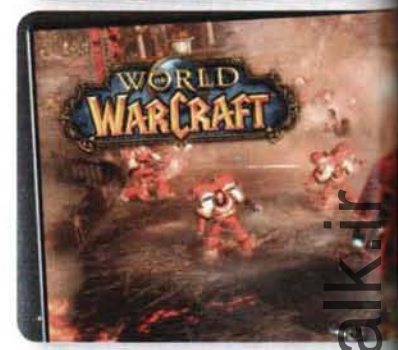
- a Do you ever visit any of the websites on this page, or websites like them? How much time do you spend a day on the internet? Do you use it mainly for your work / studies or for pleasure?
- b Look at some words and phrases related to the internet. Match them with their definitions.

attachment download google log in on line  
search for skype social net work upload wifi

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ *adj, adv* on the internet
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ *noun* sth you send with an email, e.g. a document or a photo
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ *verb* to move sth from your computer to an internet site, e.g. photos
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ *verb* to move sth from an internet site to your computer, e.g. music, films
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ *verb* to type words into the search engine Google® to find information about sb / sth
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ *verb* to make a telephone call over the internet
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ *verb* to type your username (usually your name or email address) and a password to begin using a computer or a website
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ *noun* a way of connecting a computer to the internet without wires
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ *noun* a website that people use to communicate, e.g. Facebook, Twitter, etc.
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ *verb* to try to find sb or sth, e.g. on the internet

Dictionary abbreviations  
sth = something sb = somebody

- c (5 35)) Listen and check. Repeat the words. Underline the stressed syllable in the multisyllable words.





## 2 SPEAKING & LISTENING

- a With a partner, look at some things which people do on the internet. For each one say if you do it often, sometimes, hardly ever, or never.

*I often send emails for work. What about you?*



- send personal emails
- send emails for work
- read the news
- buy things on shopping websites
- buy things on eBay (or a similar site)
- get sports information
- visit websites about health and medicine
- use social networks
- play games
- download music
- visit forums about diet or looking after children
- use online banking
- use online maps for directions
- book tickets and hotels online



- b Now go through the list again and write **M** if you think men do them more than women, **W** if you think women do them more than men, and **ND** if you think there is no difference.
- c (5:36) Listen to an interview with a UK marketing expert about how men and women use the internet. Check your answers.
- d Do you think the situation is the same in your country?

## 3 GRAMMAR articles

- a Complete the email with *a, an, the*, or *-* (= no article).

Sent: Friday, 8 July 16:13  
To: Carola Whitney  
Subject: **Re: Hello!**

Hi Carola

Thanks for your email. I would really like to write to you and practise my English.

I'm <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ student at Buenos Aires University – it's <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ biggest university in Argentina. I'm studying <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ medicine. I live in Buenos Aires with my grandmother, <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ my mother's mother, because my family live in <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ small town quite far away, but I go <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ home at <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ weekend.

I love listening to <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ classical music, and <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ last week I went to <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ amazing concert at <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Opera House here.

- b ► p.144 Grammar Bank 11C. Learn more about articles and practise them.
- c Work in pairs. **A** choose a circle, think of three things, three places, etc. and tell **B**. **B** respond and ask for more information. Then change roles.

*I love fish, strawberries, and chocolate cake. I don't like tomatoes.* *Tomatoes? Why not?*

kinds of food you love (and one you don't like)

things you sometimes do on Saturday evening

things you always have in your bag or pocket

things you do first thing in the morning

things you did last night

things women usually like doing (but men don't)

jobs you would like to do (and one you wouldn't)

things men usually like doing (but women don't)



# Practical English Going home

## 1 JENNY'S LAST MORNING



a (5 38)) Watch or listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

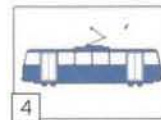
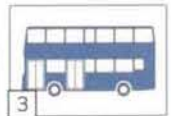
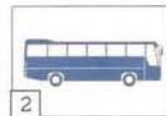
- 1 Rob arrives late.
- 2 He has a coffee with Jenny.
- 3 Jenny has good news for him.
- 4 The job offer is for a year.
- 5 Rob thinks *A writer in New York* is a good name for the column.
- 6 Rob needs time to think.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

## 2 VOCABULARY public transport

a Match the words and pictures.

- bus
- plane
- taxi
- train
- coach
- tram



b (5 39)) Listen and check.

c Complete the headings with a word from a.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_  
You get one at a ~ rank.  
They are also called cabs.  
People usually give the driver a tip (= some extra money, about 5-10%).  
In London they are black.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_  
You get one at an airport.  
First you have to check in.  
Then you go through security to the Departure lounge.  
Finally you go to your Gate.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
You get one at a station.  
You normally need to get a ticket first.  
Then you need to find the right platform.  
Some go underground in big cities. In London, this is called *The Tube*.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_  
You get one at a ~ station or a ~ stop.  
Intercity ones are also called coaches.  
You can buy a ticket in advance or sometimes you can pay the driver.  
In London they are red.

d Cover the columns and look at the headings. Try to remember the four facts about each type of public transport.





## 3 GETTING TO THE AIRPORT

- a (5:40) Watch or listen to Jenny's three conversations. How does she get to the airport?
- b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Say	You Hear
Could you call me a taxi, please?	Yes, of course. _____ to?
To Paddington station.	And when would you like it _____?
Now, please.	
How much is it?	That's £ _____, please.
Make it £15. And could I have a receipt?	Thank you very much, _____.
Could I have a ticket to Heathrow Airport, please?	Single or _____?
Single, please.	Standard or _____ class?
Standard, please.	That's £18.
Can I pay by credit card?	Yes, of _____.

- c (5:41) Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.
- d Practise the dialogue with a partner.
- e In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. Then swap roles.
- A (book open) You are the receptionist, the taxi driver, and the ticket clerk. The taxi costs £11.60. The ticket costs £18.90.
- B (book closed) You want to get a taxi to Victoria Station, and then a train to Gatwick Airport. Begin with *Could you call me a taxi, please?*



## 4 SAYING GOODBYE

- a (5:42) Watch or listen and answer the questions.



- 1 What does Jenny leave in the hotel?
- 2 How does she get it back?
- 3 What has Rob decided to do?
- 4 Is Eddie going to meet her at the airport? Why (not)?
- 5 Who is Eddie? How old is he?

- b Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: Jenny or Rob?

### Social English phrases

I can't believe it!	I'm so happy.
Thank you so much.	Have a good journey.
I'd love to [accept].	See you in [New York].

- c (5:43) Watch or listen and check. How do you say them in your language?
- d Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.



Can you...?

- ask for a taxi
- buy a ticket on public transport
- use common phrases, e.g. *Have a good journey, See you in New York*, etc.



Have you seen the film?

No, I haven't, but I've read the book.

# 12A Books and films

## 1 GRAMMAR present perfect

- a Look at some images from films. What do the films have in common?
- b (5 44)) Listen to Alan and Lucy talking on the phone. What two things are they going to do tonight?
- c Listen again and read the conversation. Complete the chart below and answer the questions with a partner.

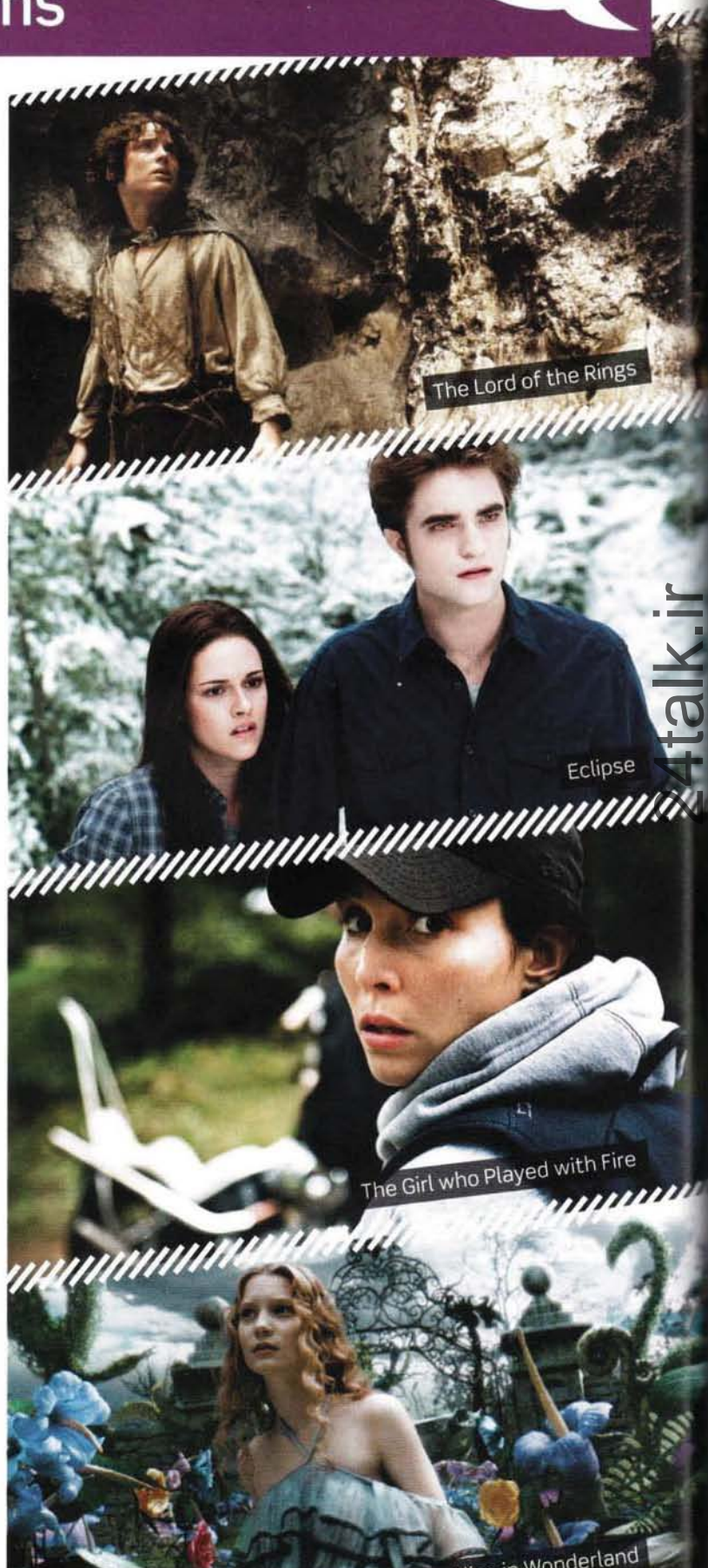
**Alan** Hi, Lucy. Have you finished your report?  
**Lucy** Yes, I have, finally!  
**Alan** What do you want to do tonight? Do you want to go out?  
**Lucy** No, I'm a bit tired.  
**Alan** Would you like to come here? I can order pizzas and we can watch a film.  
**Lucy** Good idea. What films do you have?  
**Alan** How about *Eclipse*? Have you seen it?  
**Lucy** No, I haven't seen it, but I've read the book.  
**Alan** Is it good?  
**Lucy** I loved it! Vampires – perfect for a winter night!  
**Alan** Great. What pizza topping do you want?  
**Lucy** Cheese and blood, please...no, cheese and tomato.

+	I've seen the film.
-	I _____ the film.
?	_____ you _____ the film?

- 1 What is 've? What verb is *seen* from?
- 2 Change the three sentences in the chart to third person singular (*He* or *She*).
- 3 Lucy says *I've read the book*. Do we know *when* she read it?
- d ➤ p.146 Grammar Bank 12A. Learn more about the present perfect and practise it.
- e Look at the films in a and talk to a partner. Which of the films have you seen? Have you read any of the books?

*I've seen Eclipse, but I haven't read the book.*

*I haven't seen the film of Alice in Wonderland, but I've read the book.*



24talk.ir



## 2 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a (5 46) Listen and repeat the dialogue. Copy the rhythm.



- A Have you **seen** *The Hobbit*?  
 B No, I **haven't**.  
 A Have you **read** the book?  
 B Yes, I **have**. I've read it **twice**.

b Write down the names of three more films from books. Ask and answer with a partner.

Have you seen...? (Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.)  
 Have you read the book?

## 3 VOCABULARY

irregular past participles

a Look at some irregular past participles. Which verbs do you think they are from? Write the infinitive and the past simple.

	infinitive	past simple	past participle
1	be	was / were	been
2			broken
3			done
4			eaten
5			fallen
6			forgotten
7			gone
8			left
9			sung
10			spoken
11			taken
12			worn

b (5 47) Listen and check.

c (5 48) Cover a. Listen and say the past simple and past participle.

))) be (was / were, been)

d Complete the Verb column with a past participle from a.

- |  | Verb  |
|--|-------|
| 1 Have you <input type="checkbox"/> your homework?                                   | _____ |
| 2 I'm sorry, I've <input type="checkbox"/> your name.                                | _____ |
| 3 Have you ever <input type="checkbox"/> a photo of an actor?                        | _____ |
| 4 Ann's <input type="checkbox"/> on holiday. She's going to be away for three weeks. | _____ |
| 5 Have you <input type="checkbox"/> to Mike about the party?                         | _____ |
| 6 I've never <input type="checkbox"/> that jacket. It was a big mistake.             | _____ |
| 7 Jim's <input type="checkbox"/> in love with an Italian girl.                       | _____ |
| 8 Oh no! I've <input type="checkbox"/> my glasses.                                   | _____ |

e Cover the Verb column. Can you remember the sentences?

## 4 SPEAKING & LISTENING

a Complete the phrases with the past participle of the verb in brackets.

FILM EXPERIENCES		
Find someone who has...		
	Name	What film was it?
1 _____ asleep watching a film (fall)		
2 _____ the soundtrack of a film (buy)		
3 _____ the cinema before the end of a film (leave)		
4 _____ a film more than three times (see)		
5 _____ in a film (cry)		
6 _____ a film in English with subtitles (see)		
7 _____ in a film (appear)		

b Stand up and move around the class. Ask *Have you ever...?* questions with 1–7. When somebody answers *Yes, I have*, write down their name and ask *What film was it?*

c (5 49) Listen to three people answering one of the questions from a. Which question is it?

d Listen again. Complete the chart for each person.

	Which film?	How many?	Why?
1			
2			
3			

5 (5 50) SONG Flashdance 🎵



# 12B I've never been there!

## 1 LISTENING

- a Are you following a TV series at the moment? Which one? Why do you like it?
- b (5 51)) Look at the information about an episode from an American TV series. Listen to part of the episode. Then answer questions 1 and 2.



### Episode 5

Jess's birthday is on Friday and Matt wants to take her somewhere special...

- 1 Which restaurants has Jess eaten in before? Tick (✓) or cross (X) the boxes.
- The Peking Duck    Appetito    Luigi's
- 2 Do they agree which restaurant to go to?
- c Listen again and answer the questions.
- When did Jess go to *The Peking Duck* and who with?
  - How many times has she been to *Appetito*?
  - What did Matt say happened when they went to *Luigi's*?
  - Why is Jess angry?
  - Who does Jess think Matt went with to *Luigi's*?
  - What does Matt say? Do you believe him?

## 2 GRAMMAR

present perfect or past simple?

- a Look at part of the conversation between Matt and Jess. In pairs, answer the questions.

**Matt** Have you been to *The Peking Duck*?  
**Jess** Yes, I have.  
**Matt** Oh no! When did you go there?  
**Jess** Last month. I went with the people from work.

- What tense is Matt's first question?
- What tense is Matt's second question?
- Which of the two questions is about a specific time in the past?

- b ➤ p.146 Grammar Bank 12B. Learn more about the present perfect and past simple and practise them.
- c Play *Guess where I've been*.

### Guess where I've been

- Write down the names of **six** cities in your country or abroad (three you **have been to** and three you **haven't been to**).
- Swap lists with your partner. Tick (✓) the three cities you think your partner has been to, but don't tell him / her.
- Ask *Have you been to...?* for each place to check your guesses. Did you guess right?

Have you been to Oxford?

- Now ask some past simple questions for the cities your partner *has* been to.

When did you go to...?

Did you like it?



### 3 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

more irregular past participles

a Look at some more irregular past participles. Write the infinitive and the past simple.







1	buy	bought	bought
2	_____	_____	drunk
3	_____	_____	found
4	_____	_____	given
5	_____	_____	heard
6	_____	_____	had
7	_____	_____	known
8	_____	_____	lost
9	_____	_____	made
10	_____	_____	met
11	_____	_____	paid
12	_____	_____	sent
13	_____	_____	spent
14	_____	_____	thought
15	_____	_____	won

b 5 54)) Listen and check.

c ► p.165 Irregular verbs Tick (✓) all the ones you know. Try to learn the new ones.

d 5 55)) Put three irregular past participles in each column. Listen and check.

bought broken done driven drunk  
forgotten given gone known lost  
made paid spoken sung taken  
thought worn written

 clock	 fish	 train
 up	 phone	 horse

e Play past participle *Bingo*.

### 4 SPEAKING

a Look at question 1 below. What words are missing in the present perfect question? What words are missing in the past simple question? What form do you need of the verb in **bold**?

#### Recently...

Present perfect	Past simple
1 / <b>be</b> to the cinema recently?	What / see? / like it?
2 / <b>buy</b> any new clothes recently?	What / buy?
3 / <b>have</b> a really good meal recently?	Where / go? What / have?
4 / <b>be</b> to a sports match recently?	/ your team win?



#### In your life...

Present perfect	Past simple
5 / <b>ever be</b> on TV?	What programme / it?
6 / <b>ever lose</b> your mobile?	Where / lose it? / find it?
7 / <b>ever win</b> a cup or medal?	What / win it for?
8 / <b>ever speak</b> to a famous person?	Who / it? What / say?



b Work in pairs. A ask B the questions. If B answers *Yes, I have*, ask the past simple questions too. Then change roles.



# 12C The English File questionnaire

## 1 READING

- a Read the information about Sir Ian McKellen. Have you seen any of his films? Did you like them?

Sir Ian McKellen is one of Britain's greatest actors. He was born in Burnley in the north of England on 25 May 1939. He first became well known as an actor for his roles in Shakespeare's plays, e.g. *Hamlet* and *Macbeth*. In recent years he has had many important film roles including James Whale in *Gods and Monsters*, Gandalf in *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy, and Magneto in *X-Men*.



- b Sir Ian McKellen agreed to be interviewed especially for *English File*. Read the interview and write a heading from the list below in each section.

YOUR ABILITIES

YOUR WORK EXPERIENCES

YOUR HOME

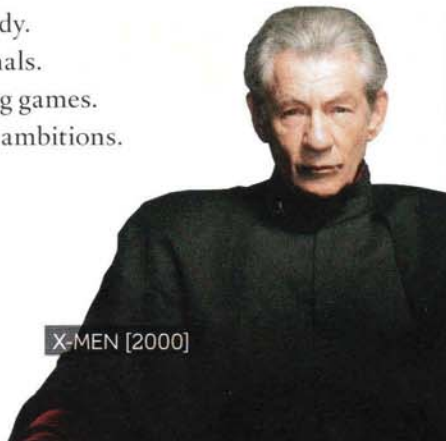
YOUR LIFESTYLE

YOUR PLACES

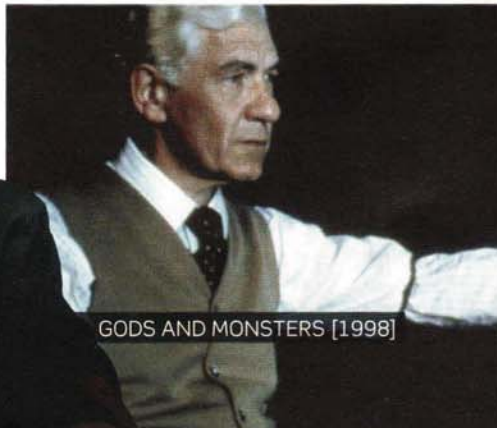
YOUR TASTES

- c Read the interview again. Then mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Say why the F ones are false.

- 1 He became an actor when he was a student.
- 2 He lives outside London.
- 3 He gets up early every day.
- 4 He's never been to India.
- 5 He spends a long time on the internet every day.
- 6 He read *The Lord of the Rings* when he was young.
- 7 His desk isn't very tidy.
- 8 He doesn't like animals.
- 9 He relaxes by playing games.
- 10 He doesn't have any ambitions.



X-MEN [2000]



GODS AND MONSTERS [1998]



MACBETH [1979]

## INTERVIEW WITH SIR IAN MCKELLEN

### 1 YOUR TASTES

**What kind of music do you like?**

I hardly ever listen to music at home – I prefer going to concerts. I enjoy classical music and pop, but my favourite kind of music is traditional American jazz.

**What book are you reading at the moment?**

I'm reading *The Hammersteins*, a biography of the American theatre family written by Oscar Andrew Hammerstein.

**Who's your favourite historical character?**

Perhaps William Shakespeare.

### 2

**What time do you usually get up in the morning?**

If I am working, I get up one hour before I have to leave the house. If I am not working, and I went to bed late the night before, I get up at about 10 in the morning.

**How much time do you spend a day on the internet?**

I can very easily spend three or four hours on the internet, answering emails, reading the news, etc. I think of the internet as a wonderful encyclopaedia of information.

**How do you relax?**

I enjoy a late night sudoku, but especially being with friends.

### 3

**What's your favourite room in the house?**

Perhaps the living room where I cook and eat, and from where I can see the River Thames in London.

**What do you always have on your desk?**

I always have too many letters, papers, and books which are waiting for me to read.

**Do you have any pets?** I love dogs, but I can't have one because I'm often away from home.



## 4

### What languages do you speak?

I only speak English, but I can remember a little of the French I learned at school.

Can you play a musical instrument? No.

Is there something you would like to learn to do? Yes – many things, e.g. to sing well, to play the piano, and to speak foreign languages.

## 5

### What's your favourite place in London?

I love the River Thames and the views from its many bridges.

Where are you going to go for your next holiday? I'm going to go to India for the first time in February.

What's the most beautiful city you've ever visited? I can't choose between Edinburgh, Prague, and Venice.

## 6

### What was your first job?

The first money I earned as a professional actor was when I was a student at Cambridge University in 1959. I played small parts in audio recordings of Shakespeare's plays.

### When did you first read *The Lord of the Rings*?

I read it first when I was preparing to play Gandalf in the movie trilogy.

### What was the best and worst thing about filming *The Lord of the Rings*?

The best thing about filming was discovering the countryside and people of New Zealand. But the worst thing was living away from home for a year or more.



LORD OF THE RINGS [2003]

## 2 VOCABULARY revision: word groups

a Put these words from the interview in the right column.

actor books desk go to bed living room small

Rooms	Things	Jobs
Furniture	Adjectives	Daily routine

b With a partner, add three more words to each column.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION revision: sounds

a Look at some words from the interview. Which word has a different sound?

1 school choose cook too

2 first earn worst year

3 say wait can't favourite

4 friends many people ever

5 enjoy bridge dog languages

6 hour home perhaps hardly

7 thing three the think

8 information school traditional professional

b (5/56) Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

## 4 GRAMMAR & SPEAKING

revision: question formation

a Without looking back at the interview, try to remember the questions for these answers.

- Perhaps William Shakespeare.
- I'm going to go to India for the first time in February.
- I only speak English...
- I can't choose between Edinburgh, Prague, and Venice.
- I read it first when I was preparing to play Gandalf...

b Choose eight questions from the questionnaire to ask a partner.



# 11&12 Revise and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

- You speak \_\_\_\_\_.  
a very slow  
b very slowly  
c very slower
- She plays tennis \_\_\_\_\_.  
a quite well  
b quite good  
c quite goodly
- My husband works \_\_\_\_\_.  
a incredible hard  
b incredibly hard  
c incredibly hardly
- I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ a Ferrari.  
a drive b to drive c driving
- What do we need \_\_\_\_\_ next?  
a to do b do c doing
- She wants to pass her exams, but she doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_.  
a study b studing c studying
- \_\_\_\_\_ usually drive fast in this country.  
a The men b Men c The man
- I saw \_\_\_\_\_ good film last night.  
a the b a c -
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ best place to eat in the city centre.  
a the b a c -
- Do you go to \_\_\_\_\_ bed late at weekends?  
a the b a c -
- I've read the book, but I \_\_\_\_\_ the film.  
a don't see  
b haven't saw  
c haven't seen
- A** Have you \_\_\_\_\_ anyone famous?  
**B** Yes, I have. A famous film actor.  
a ever met b ever meet c met ever
- \_\_\_\_\_ he been to New York?  
a Has b Did c Have
- We \_\_\_\_\_ to Italy last year.  
a have gone b have been c went
- She \_\_\_\_\_ in a restaurant before.  
a did never worked  
b have never worked  
c has never worked

## VOCABULARY

a Write the opposite adjective or adverb.

- |                 |               |                   |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1 quickly _____ | 3 well _____  | 5 formal _____    |
| 2 safe _____    | 4 noisy _____ | 6 healthily _____ |

b Complete the sentences with these verbs.

need learn promise want

- I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ to dance the tango.
- You don't \_\_\_\_\_ to wash it. You've only worn it once.
- I can't \_\_\_\_\_ to be on time. It depends on the traffic.
- Do you \_\_\_\_\_ to go to a restaurant or to a pub for lunch?

c Complete the sentences with these internet words.

attachment wifi download online website

- I do a lot of shopping \_\_\_\_\_ these days.
- I can \_\_\_\_\_ the song for you tonight.
- You can find all the information on the hotel's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Don't open an \_\_\_\_\_ when you don't know who it's from.
- We have \_\_\_\_\_ at home so I can send emails from my bedroom.

d Complete the sentences with *for*, *in*, *with*, or *up*.




- Log \_\_\_\_\_ with your username and password.
- I looked \_\_\_\_\_ U2 on Wikipedia – they started in 1976.
- You can search \_\_\_\_\_ all kinds of information on the internet.
- Have you ever seen a film \_\_\_\_\_ subtitles?

e Write the past participle of the following verbs.

- |                 |                   |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1 see saw _____ | 3 know knew _____ | 5 fall fell _____ |
| 2 go went _____ | 4 give gave _____ | 6 take took _____ |

## PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

-  done sung gone won
-  said been any left
-  want had what watch
-  choose soon food book
-  worst wore prefer search

b Underline the stressed syllable.

- 1 po|lite|ly 2 dan|ge|rous|ly 3 de|cide 4 a|ttach|ment 5 web|site



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

- a Read the text and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
- 1 It is cheaper to live in the US than in the UK.
  - 2 It is more expensive to be ill in the US.
  - 3 Waiters are better in UK restaurants.
  - 4 It's more difficult to make friends in the US.
  - 5 The British are less direct than Americans.
- b Look at the **highlighted** words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

Amy Johnson is an American who lives and works in England. We asked her to tell us about her first impressions of the UK.

One of my first impressions was that the UK is more expensive than the US. I live in Oxford and **the cost of living**, (rent, bills, food, etc.) is higher than in Ohio, where I'm from in the US. The only thing that is a lot cheaper here is **healthcare** – it's free to go to the doctor's or to hospital, whereas in the US it isn't, so you need to have health **insurance**, which can be very expensive.

I think you can eat very well in England – there's a **wide variety** of food from all around the world – Chinese, Japanese, Italian, Turkish, etc. – but eating out is more expensive than in the US, and the service is worse. Generally, I'd say British food is healthier than American food, and the **portions** are a lot smaller, too.

As for the people, I find British people quite **pessimistic** compared to Americans who are usually very positive and optimistic about the future. Also, when I'm in Ohio I talk to everybody: shop assistants, the person behind me in the supermarket **queue**, the person sitting next to me in the restaurant, but I can't do that in the UK – people are much more **reserved**. But, **on the other hand**, I think it is easier to make **real** friends here than in the US. I also find British people are not very good at telling you what they really think or (in a work situation) saying something negative about you. Americans just say things as they are!



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

(5 57)) **In the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.



- 1 Selina was surprised when she arrived in London because it was the summer but \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a the weather was bad
  - b there weren't many tourists
  - c the weather was good
- 2 David would like to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a get a completely new job
  - b change the job that he has
  - c do a job he did before
- 3 When Ruth talks about Mamma Mia she doesn't mention \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a the actors
  - b the soundtrack
  - c the story
- 4 Ben thinks that women drive \_\_\_\_\_ than men.
  - a more slowly
  - b less dangerously
  - c better
- 5 Justin went to a karaoke bar \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a a long time ago
  - b quite recently
  - c last year

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

- 1  say how people in your country a) drive b) dress
- 2  say three things you would like to do in the future
- 3  say which of the following you prefer and why
  - classical music or pop music
  - summer holidays or winter holidays
  - Chinese food or Japanese food
- 4  say what things you do on the internet and how often
- 5  answer the questions below
  - What city have you been to recently?
  - When did you go there?
  - What did you do there?
  - What's the best / worst thing about your town?

**Short films** the Electric Cinema  
Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.



# Communication

## 1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM?

Student A

a Ask B the questions about person 1.

- Where's Masako from?
- Where in (country)?



	1	2	3
Name	Masako	Carlo	Petra
From	( )	( )	( )

b Answer B's questions about person 4.

c Repeat for the other people.



	4	5	6
Name	Ali	Antonia	Oliver
From	Turkey (Ankara)	Mexico (Acapulco)	Germany (Berlin)

## 1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME? Student A

a Look at the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross (X) the names you think are not their real names.



Tom Hanks, actor	Bono, singer	Angelina Jolie, actress	Katy Perry, singer

b Check your answers. Tell B *I think \_\_\_\_\_ is / isn't his / her real name.* If B says *No, it isn't,* ask B *What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?* and write the name under the photo.

c Answer B's questions.



Jude Law, actor	Tina Turner, singer X	Eminem, singer X	Scarlett Johansson, actress
✓ real name	Anna Mae Bullock	Marshall Mathers	✓ real name

## 2A WHAT'S ON THE TABLE?

Students A+B

a Look at the picture for one minute. Try to remember the things on the table.

b Close your books and write down the ten things on the table.

c Now compare with your partner. Did he / she remember more things than you?





## 2C WHAT'S THE MATTER?

Student A

a Read the conversation.

- A What's the matter?  
B I'm sad.  
A Don't be sad. Cheer up.  
B Thanks.

b Have four conversations with B. Ask B *What's the matter?* B answers. Then choose a phrase below.

Relax. Have a holiday. Open the window.  
Have a drink. Don't worry.

c Change roles. B asks you *What's the matter?* You answer with 1 below. B responds with a phrase. Then you respond, e.g. *Thanks, OK, Good idea, etc.*

- 1 I'm bored.                      3 I'm tired.  
2 I'm cold.                        4 I'm hungry.

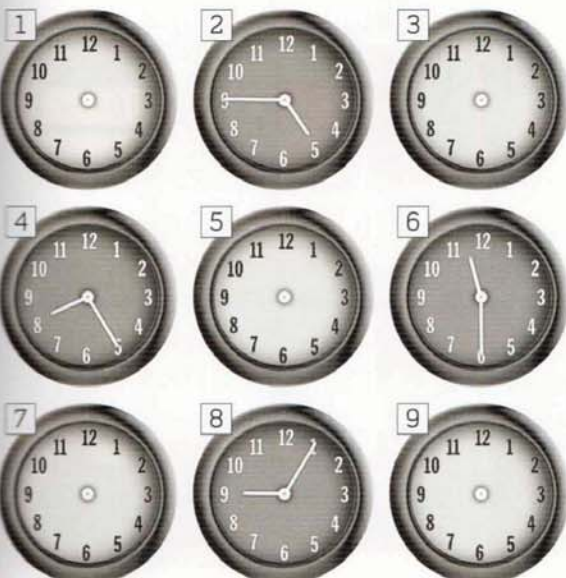
d Cover the phrases and do all eight conversations again from memory.

## PE2 WHAT'S THE TIME?

Student A

Ask and answer questions with B to complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

Clock 1: What's the time / What time is it?



## 4B NICO'S DAY Student A

- a Ask B the questions below. B must find the answers in the text.
- 1 What time does Nico get up? (*He gets up at 6.30.*)
  - 2 What does he have for breakfast? (*He has a coffee and cereal.*)
  - 3 What two things does he check at the restaurant? (*He checks the reservations and his emails.*)
  - 4 What time do all the customers arrive? (*They arrive at 1.30.*)
  - 5 How many customers do they have in the restaurant at lunchtime? (*They have 85 customers.*)
  - 6 What does Nico ask the customers? (*He asks if they are happy with the food.*)
  - 7 What does Nico do after lunch? (*He goes back to the kitchen and plans the food for the evening menu.*)
  - 8 What time does he go home in the afternoon? (*He goes home at 5.30.*)
  - 9 What does Nico do at 7.30? (*He goes back to the restaurant and checks everything is OK.*)
  - 10 What time does Nico go home? (*He goes home at 10 o'clock.*)
- b Look at the text. Find the answers to B's questions.

## 4C SHORT LIFE, LONG LIFE? Students A+B

Interview your partner. A ask the questions in the questionnaire. B answer and give more information if you can. Then change roles.

### How often do you...?

- 1 **have breakfast**  
a hardly ever / never  
b sometimes / usually  
c always
- 2 **eat fresh fruit and vegetables**  
a hardly ever  
b once a day  
c three times a day
- 3 **eat fast food**  
a often  
b sometimes  
c hardly ever / never
- 4 **do exercise**  
a hardly ever / never  
b once or twice a week  
c three or four times a week
- 5 **feel tired or stressed**  
a always / often  
b sometimes  
c hardly ever / never

### 6 drink alcohol

- a every day  
b hardly ever / never  
c sometimes

### 7 see your friends

- a sometimes  
b often  
c very often

### How many...?

- 8 **hours do you usually sleep a day**  
a 0 to 4  
b 5 to 6  
c 7 to 9
- 9 **cups of coffee do you drink a day**  
a more than five  
b usually only one or two  
c I don't drink coffee
- 10 **Which of these is true for you?**  
a I'm not very positive about life.  
b I'm usually positive about life.  
c I'm always positive about life.

Now calculate your partner's score.

a=5 b=7 c=10 Total score = number of years you live



# Communication

## 5A DO YOU WANT TO BE FAMOUS? Students A+B

Interview each other with the questionnaire. Ask *Can you...?* If the answer is *Yes, I can*, ask *How well?* Do you think your partner has the X Factor?

You want to be **famous** – but what can you do?

✓ = yes  
 X = no  
 3 = very well  
 2 = quite well  
 1 = not very well

### Music

sing  
 play an instrument  
 dance  
 read or write music

✓/X

How well?

### Words

write short stories  
 write poems or song lyrics  
 speak foreign languages  
 speak in public

✓/X

How well?

### Art

take artistic photos  
 draw cartoons  
 paint pictures  
 design websites or logos

### Sport

run a half marathon  
 play a team sport  
 do a winter or water sport  
 do an individual sport

## 5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES Student A

You and B have the same picture but with eight differences.

- Tell B what is happening in flats 1–4 and in the garden on the left. B will tell you what is different in his / her picture. Circle the differences.
- Listen to B telling you what is happening in flats 5–8 and in the garden on the right. Look at your picture and tell B if it is the same or different. If it is different, tell B what is happening. Circle the differences.
- When you finish, compare the two pictures.





## 5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW?

Student A

- a Ask B your questions.
- What do you do?
  - What are you doing now?
  - Are you wearing a watch today?
  - Do you usually wear a watch?
  - What kind of books do you usually read?
  - What are you reading at the moment?
- b Answer B's questions.

## 6A READING IN ENGLISH

Students A+B

How do you usually read?

- a on paper    b on screen    c on an eReader

What kind of things do you read?

- a books                      d websites  
b newspapers              e work documents  
c magazines                f others (what?)

When and where do you usually read?

- a at work / school  
b when you are on a bus or train  
c on holiday  
d before you go to bed

Do you ever need to read in English? What?

## 7A WHERE WERE YOU? Student A

- a Ask B your questions. Ask *Where were you at...?*
- 9 o'clock yesterday morning
  - 11.30 yesterday evening
  - 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon
  - 12 o'clock last night
  - 6.30 yesterday evening
  - 7 o'clock this morning
- b Answer B's questions.

### Useful language

at home / work / school / university  
in bed / the street / my car  
on the bus / the train

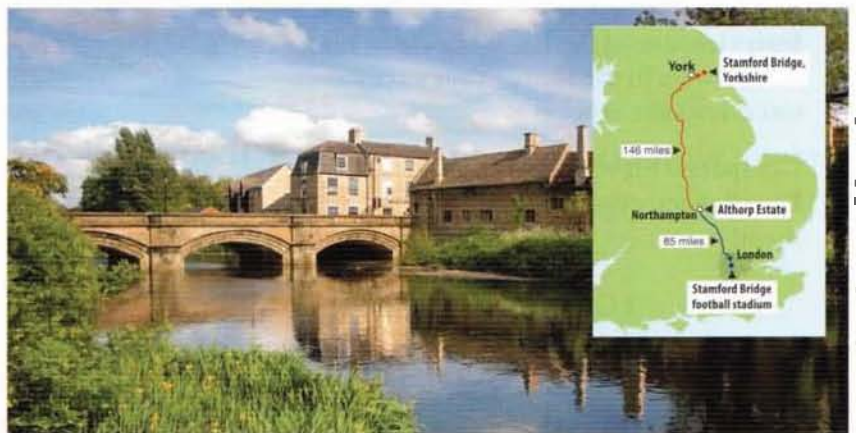
## 7B STAMFORD BRIDGE Students A+B

Tourist Information UK

# STAMFORD BRIDGE

**Stamford Bridge** is a small village in the North of England, near York. It is about 230 miles (370 kilometres) from London. It has a population of 3,500 people. It is famous for a battle between the English and the Vikings in 1066.

**NB** Don't confuse *Stamford Bridge near York* with *Stamford Bridge in London, the stadium of Chelsea Football Club!*



## 7C A NIGHT TO REMEMBER Student A

- a Ask B the questions about Mehmet's night.
- 1 When and where was it? (*Last year, in Istanbul.*)
  - 2 Who was he with? Why? (*His friends. It was his best friend's birthday.*)
  - 3 What colour T-shirt did he wear? (*Black.*)
  - 4 What is Cezayir? (*It's an old building with a bar and a restaurant.*)
  - 5 What did they do after dinner? (*They had a coffee and then they went to the beach to have a swim.*)
  - 6 Was the sea cold? (*No, it was warm.*)
  - 7 Why did he go home in his friend's car? (*Because he couldn't find his car keys.*)
  - 8 What time did he get home? (*Really late, at five o'clock in the morning.*)
- b Answer B's questions about Maria Julia's night.
- c Whose memory is better?



# Communication

## 8A POLICE INTERVIEW

Student A

Work in pairs with another A. You are police officers. There was a robbery last night. B and B are two friends. You think they were responsible. They say that they went out for dinner and went to the cinema last night. You want to know if this is true.

- Look at the Police interview form and prepare to ask the Bs the questions. Think of more questions to get more details about the evening, e.g. *What did you wear? What did you eat and drink? What film was it?*
- Interview one of the Bs. Write down his / her answers in the form. (Your partner interviews the other B.)
- Compare with your partner. Did the two Bs tell exactly the same story? If not, arrest them!

## POLICE INTERVIEW FORM

Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

	What time?	Where?	More details:
/ meet?			
/ have dinner?			
/ go to the cinema?			

What / do after the cinema?	
What time / get home?	

## 8C THE GHOST ROOM Student A

- Look at the picture for a minute. Try to remember what's in the room.
- Ask B the questions.
  - / a TV? (*No, there wasn't.*)
  - / a double or a single bed? (*There was a single bed.*)
  - / a mirror? Where was it? (*Yes, there was. It was on the table.*)
  - / any plants? (*No, there weren't.*)
  - / any books in the room? (*No, there weren't.*)
  - How many windows / ? (*There were two.*)
- Close your books. Answer B's questions.





## 9C QUIZ NIGHT Student A

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative from the **bold** adjectives.

- 1 **small** Spain is \_\_\_\_\_ than France.  
(True. Spain is 505,000 square kilometres and France is 544,000.)
- 2 **long** The river Amazon is \_\_\_\_\_ than the river Nile.  
(False. The Amazon is about 6,400 km long and the Nile is about 6,670 km long.)
- 3 **old** Oxford University is \_\_\_\_\_ than Cambridge University.  
(True. Oxford University was founded in 1170 and Cambridge 40 years later.)
- 4 **short** The English alphabet is \_\_\_\_\_ than the Arabic alphabet.  
(True. There are 26 letters in the English alphabet and 28 in the Arabic alphabet.)
- 5 **dangerous** K2 is \_\_\_\_\_ to climb than Mount Everest.  
(True. 40% of climbers who get to the top of K2 die, but only 9% of climbers of Everest die.)
- 6 **large** A gigabyte is \_\_\_\_\_ than a megabyte.  
(True. A megabyte is 1,000 bytes, but a gigabyte is 1,000 megabytes.)
- 7 **dry** The Sahara Desert is \_\_\_\_\_ than the Atacama Desert.  
(False. Sahara Desert average rainfall = 25 mm; Atacama Desert average rainfall = 0.1 mm.)
- 8 **far** New Zealand is \_\_\_\_\_ south than Australia.  
(True. It's 2,000 km south-east of Australia.)

b Play Quiz Night. You are the presenter.

- Read your sentence 1 to B. B must say if it's true or false.
- Tell B if he / she is right and give the extra information in brackets.
- If B is right, he / she wins 500 euros. Then read sentence 2 for 1,000 euros, sentence 3 for 2,000 euros, sentence 4 for 4,000 euros, etc.
- If B gets a question wrong, he / she loses the money, but continues to play. The prize starts again from 500 euros.

c Play Quiz Night again. You are the contestant.

## 10A CITIES QUIZ Student A

a Complete your questions with the superlative of the adjectives in brackets.

- 1 What's the \_\_\_\_\_ city in the world? (noisy)  
a **Tokyo** b Madrid c Rome
- 2 What's the \_\_\_\_\_ city in the world? (hot)  
a Rio de Janeiro b **Bangkok** c Nairobi
- 3 Which city has the \_\_\_\_\_ monument in the world? (popular)  
a New York b **Paris** c Istanbul
- 4 What's the \_\_\_\_\_ city in Europe? (foggy)  
a Prague b London c **Milan**
- 5 Which city has the \_\_\_\_\_ traffic jams in the world? (bad)  
a São Paulo b **Beijing** c Mexico City

b Answer B's questions.

c Ask B your questions. Does he / she know the answers? (The correct answers are in **bold**.)

What's the noisiest city in the world, Tokyo, Madrid, or Rome?

## 10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO?

Student A

a Ask B the questions below.

- |                     |                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Tonight</b>      | • What / do tonight?                |
|                     | • / study English? Why (not)?       |
| <b>Tomorrow</b>     | • What time / get up tomorrow?      |
|                     | • Where / have lunch?               |
| <b>Next weekend</b> | • / go away next weekend? Where to? |
|                     | • What / do on Saturday night?      |

b Answer B's questions.



# Communication

## 1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM? Student B

a Answer A's questions about person 1.

			
	1	2	3
Name	Masako	Carlo	Petra
From	Japan (Osaka)	Italy (Milan)	Hungary (Budapest)

b Ask A the questions about person 4.

- Where's Ali from?
- Where in (country)?

			
	4	5	6
Name	Ali	Antonia	Oliver
From	( )	( )	( )


c Repeat for the other people.

## 1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME? Student B

a Look at the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross (X) the names you think are not their real names.

			
Jude Law, actor	Tina Turner, singer	Eminem, singer	Scarlett Johansson, actress
_____	_____	_____	_____

b Answer A's questions.

			
Tom Hanks, actor	Bono, singer X	Angelina Jolie, actress	Katy Perry, singer X
✓ real name	Paul Hewson	✓ real name	Katheryn Hudson

c Check your answers to a. Tell A *I think \_\_\_\_\_ is / isn't his / her real name.* If A says *No, it isn't*, ask A *What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?* and write the name under the photo.

## 2C WHAT'S THE MATTER? Student B

a Read the conversation.

- A What's the matter?  
 B I'm sad.  
 A Don't be sad. Cheer up.  
 B Thanks.

b Have four conversations with A. A asks you *What's the matter?* You answer with **1** below. A responds with a phrase. Then you respond, e.g. *Thanks, OK, Good idea*, etc.

1 I'm hot. 2 I'm thirsty. 3 I'm worried. 4 I'm stressed.

c Have four more conversations.

Ask A *What's the matter?* A answers. Then choose a phrase below.

- Close the window.  
 Have a sandwich.  
 Read a book.  
 Sit down.

d Cover the phrases and do all eight conversations again from memory.

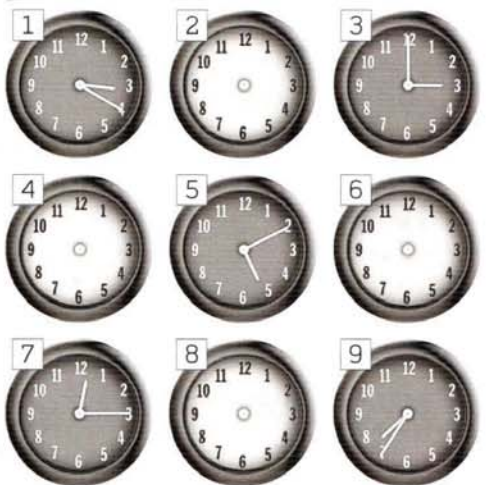


**PE2 WHAT'S THE TIME?**

Student B

Ask and answer questions with A to complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

Clock 2: What's the time / What time is it?



**4B NICO'S DAY** Student B

- a Look at the *Father & Daughter* text. Find the answers to A's questions.
- b Ask A the questions below. A must find the answers in the text.
  - 1 What part of the newspaper does Nico read? (*He reads the sports section.*)
  - 2 Where does he go after breakfast? (*He goes to the market.*)
  - 3 What time does he start cooking the food for lunch? (*He starts cooking at 10.30.*)
  - 4 How many cups of coffee does he have in the morning? (*He has three cups of coffee.*)
  - 5 What time does Nico have lunch? (*He has lunch at 3.30.*)
  - 6 Why doesn't Nico enjoy his lunch? (*Because he doesn't have time to relax.*)
  - 7 How long does he spend with the children in the afternoon? (*He spends a couple of hours / two hours with them.*)
  - 8 What do Nico and the children do between 5.30 and 7.30? (*The children do their homework and Nico makes their dinner.*)
  - 9 What is the first thing Nico does when he gets home? (*He has a shower.*)
  - 10 What time does he go to bed? (*He goes to bed at 11 o'clock.*)

**5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES** Student B

You and A have the same picture but with eight differences.

- a Listen to A telling you what is happening in flats 1–4 and in the garden on the left. Look at your picture and tell A if it is the same or different. If it is different, tell A what is happening. Circle the differences.
- b Tell A what is happening in flats 5–8 and in the garden on the right. A will tell you what is different in his / her picture. Circle the differences.
- c When you finish, compare the two pictures.





# Communication

## 5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW? Student B

- a Answer A's questions.
- b Ask A your questions.
- Do your parents work? What do they do?
  - What do you think they are doing now?
  - Do you watch a series on TV?
  - What TV series are you watching at the moment?
  - Is it raining now?
  - Does it rain a lot at this time of year?

## 7A WHERE WERE YOU? Student B

- a Answer A's questions.
- A *Where were you at nine o'clock yesterday morning?*
- B *I was in bed.*
- b Ask A your questions. Ask *Where were you at...?*
- 8.30 yesterday morning
  - 6.30 yesterday evening
  - 11.30 yesterday morning
  - 10 o'clock last night
  - 5 o'clock yesterday afternoon
  - 6.30 this morning

### Useful language

at home / work / school / university  
in bed / the street / my car  
on the bus / the train

## 7C A NIGHT TO REMEMBER Student B

- a Answer A's questions about Mehmet's night.
- b Ask A the questions about Maria Julia's night.
- 1 Where was she on holiday? (*In Athens.*)
  - 2 Who did she want to see? (*A Greek man that she knew when she was at university.*)
  - 3 How did she try to contact him? (*She called him many times, but he didn't answer.*)
  - 4 Where did they meet? (*At her hotel.*)
  - 5 Why was she embarrassed? (*Because her clothes weren't very special and her hair was a mess.*)
  - 6 What did they do? (*They walked round the centre of Athens.*)
  - 7 What language did they communicate in? (*They spoke English.*)
  - 8 What was the weather like? (*It was a warm night.*)
  - 9 What time did she get back to the hotel? (*At three o'clock in the morning.*)
- c Whose memory is better?

## 8A POLICE INTERVIEW Student B

Work in pairs with another B. You are friends. Last night you met, had dinner, and went to the cinema. There was a robbery last night. A and A are police officers. They think you were responsible, and they want to interview you separately. If you both tell the same story, you are innocent!

- a Prepare your story. Use these questions. Think of extra details, e.g. *What did you wear? What did you eat and drink? What film was it?*
- What time / where did you meet?
  - What time / where did you have dinner?
  - What time / where did you go to the cinema?
  - What did you do after the cinema?
  - What time did you get home?
- b Answer A's questions.
- c Did you and your friend tell the same story?



**8C THE GHOST ROOM** Student B

- a Look at the picture for a minute. Try to remember what's in the room.
- b Close your books. Answer A's questions.
- c Ask A the questions.
  - / a clock? Where was it?  
(Yes, there was. It was next to the window.)
  - / a carpet on the floor? (No, there wasn't.)
  - / a lamp or light? Where was it?  
(Yes, there was. It was on the wall.)
  - / any pictures on the wall? What of?  
(Yes, there was one. It was of a woman.)
  - / any cupboards? (No, there weren't.)
  - How many chairs / ? (There was one.)



**9A GET READY! COOK!** Students A+B

**Jack's Meal**

Starter



carrot and orange soup

Main course



chicken breasts filled with cream cheese

Dessert



pancakes with chocolate sauce

**Liz's Meal**

Starter



carrot and onion salad

Main course



pasta with creamy chicken sauce

Dessert



chocolate and orange mousse

**9B SUGAR AND SALT**

Students A+B

How much sugar?

According to the American Heart Association, a woman should have no more than 20g (grams) of sugar a day (= 5 teaspoons) and a man no more than 36g (= 9 teaspoons).

- a can of Coke has approximately 35g of sugar
- an apple has approximately 23g of sugar
- a small (40g) bar of dark chocolate has approximately 7g of sugar
- an egg doesn't have any sugar

How much salt?

According to UK Government studies, an adult should eat no more than 6g of salt a day.

- a packet of crisps has approximately 3g of salt
- a slice of white bread has approximately 0.5g of salt
- a bottle of mineral water has approximately 0.0023g of salt
- a bottle of olive oil doesn't have any salt



# Communication

## 9C QUIZ NIGHT Student B

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative from the **bold** adjectives.

- old** The Pyramids in Egypt are \_\_\_\_\_ than the Parthenon in Greece.  
(True. The Pyramids are about 4,500 years old and the Parthenon is about 2,500 years old.)
- short** The First World War was \_\_\_\_\_ than the Second World War.  
(True. The First World War lasted four years (1914–1918), but the Second World War lasted six years (1939–1945).)
- high** The mountains on Earth are \_\_\_\_\_ than the mountains on Mars.  
(False. Olympus Mons on Mars is 25 km high; Everest is about 8 km high.)
- big** China is \_\_\_\_\_ than Canada.  
(False. Canada is 10,000,000 square metres; China is about 9,600,000 square metres.)
- popular** In the UK coffee is now \_\_\_\_\_ than tea.  
(False. On average, the British drink 165,000,000 cups of tea a day and 70,000,000 cups of coffee.)
- warm** The Mediterranean Sea is \_\_\_\_\_ than the Red Sea.  
(False. Mediterranean Sea average temperature = 24–26 degrees Celsius; Red Sea average = 26–30 degrees Celsius.)
- good** It's \_\_\_\_\_ to do exercise in the morning than in the afternoon.  
(False. In the afternoon between 4 and 5 p.m. the body temperature is at its maximum, which means it is the perfect time to exercise.)
- hot** The earth is \_\_\_\_\_ than the moon.  
(False. The average temperature of the moon is about 123 degrees Celsius during the day; the average temperature of the earth is 13–17 degrees Celsius.)

b Play *Quiz Night*. You are the contestant.

- A will read you his / her sentence 1. You must say if it's true or false.
- A will tell you if you are right, and give you extra information.
- If you are right, you win 500 euros. A then reads you sentence 2 for 1,000 euros, sentence 3 for 2,000 euros, sentence 4 for 4,000 euros, etc.
- If you get a question wrong, you lose all the money, but continue to play. The prize starts again from 500 euros.

c Play *Quiz Night* again. You are the presenter. Use your questions 1–8.

## 10A CITIES QUIZ Student B

a Complete your questions with the superlative of the adjectives in brackets.

b Ask A your questions. Does he / she know the answers? (the correct answers are in **bold**.)

- Which city has the \_\_\_\_\_ quality of life in the world? (good)  
a Vienna b **Copenhagen** c Miami
- Which US city has the \_\_\_\_\_ population? (big)  
a **New York** b Chicago c San Francisco
- Which city has the \_\_\_\_\_ airport in the world? (busy)  
a London b **Atlanta** c Singapore
- What's the \_\_\_\_\_ capital city in the world? (high)  
a **La Paz, Bolivia**  
b Kathmandu, Nepal  
c Lima, Peru
- Which city has the \_\_\_\_\_ public transport in the world? (expensive)  
a Budapest b Athens c **London**

(Which city has the best quality of life in the world, Vienna, Copenhagen, or Miami?)

c Answer A's questions.

## 10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO? Student B

a Answer A's questions.

b Ask A the questions below.

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Tonight</b>      | • What / have for dinner tonight?      |
|                     | • What / do after dinner?              |
| <b>Tomorrow</b>     | • / go to work (or school) tomorrow?   |
|                     | • What / do in the evening?            |
| <b>Next weekend</b> | • / go out on Friday night? What / do? |
|                     | • What / do on Sunday?                 |



## 1 COMPLETING A FORM

a Look at the information about capital letters.

### Capital letters

In English these words start with a CAPITAL letter.

- names and surnames *Melissa Rogers*
- countries, nationalities, and languages *France, French*
- towns and cities *New York*
- days of the week *Monday*
- the first word in a sentence *Her father is from Milan.*
- the pronoun *I She's Russian and I'm Mexican.*

b Complete the form with your information.

c Write this text again with capital letters where necessary.

my name's leos. i'm from brno in the czech republic, and i speak czech, german, and a little english. my teacher is american. her name's kate. my english classes are on mondays and wednesdays.

d Write a similar text about you. Check the capital letters are correct. Then check for any other mistakes.

◀ p.9

## 2 A PERSONAL PROFILE

a Read Jamie's profile. Do you have similar interests?

b Look at the examples below.

### and, but, and or

- and** I speak English **and** a little Italian.  
I watch the news **and** football at the weekend.
- but** I speak English, **but** I don't speak Italian.  
I'm from Scotland, **but** I live in London.
- or** I don't speak English **or** Italian.  
I don't like classical music **or** jazz.
- e.g.** e.g. = for example. We often use it when we write informally. *I like rock music, e.g. Coldplay.*

c Write a profile of yourself. Use the same headings (Hometown, Music, etc.). Attach a photo if you can. Use *and*, *but*, and *or* to join your ideas together.

d Check your profile for mistakes (e.g. capital letters and spelling).

◀ p.25

## APPLICATION FOR A STUDENT VISA

### About You

First name  Surname (Family name)

Mr  Mrs  Ms  Gender Male  Female

Date of birth Day   Month   Year

Marital status Married  Single  Divorced  Separated

Nationality

Place of birth

Country  Town / City

### Contact Details

Home address

Email address

Phone number

home

mobile

Passport / Identity card number

Signature  Date

## Netfriends Worldwide



### Jamie Hamilton

#### My profile [Edit](#)

Hometown I'm from Scotland, but I live in London.

Occupation I'm a graphic designer. I work for an international company.

Languages I speak English and a little Italian.

#### Interests [Edit](#)

Music I like pop and rock. I don't like classical music or jazz.

Films I like British and European films. I love old Italian films, e.g. Fellini's 'La Strada'.

TV I watch the news in the evening and football at the weekend.

Sport I play tennis and I go to the gym.



## 3 A MAGAZINE ARTICLE

- Read Cristina's article. Is her Saturday like yours?
- Look at the examples below.



### after and then

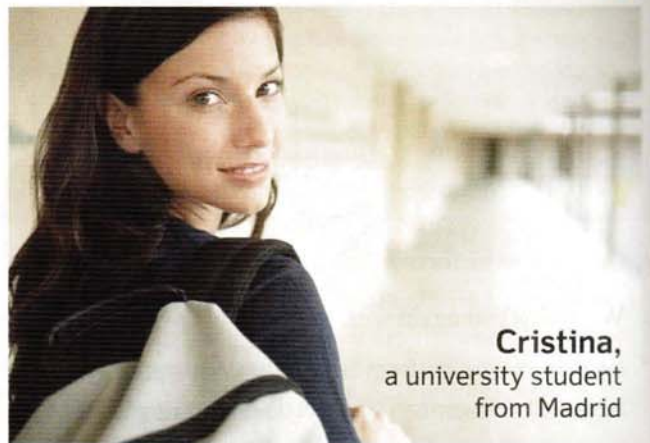
Use *after* + another word, e.g. *after lunch*, *after work*, *after that*, etc.

Use *then* to say what happens next, e.g. *I get up and then I have breakfast.*

- Read her article again and check you understand the **highlighted** words. Then use them to complete the sentences below.
  - Jack usually gets up at 7.30. \_\_\_\_\_ he has a shower.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ lunch I often sleep for half an hour.
  - She always has a bath \_\_\_\_\_ she goes to bed.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ the week I work \_\_\_\_\_ 9.00 \_\_\_\_\_ 5.00.
  - I usually get home at about midnight, and \_\_\_\_\_ I go to bed.
  - We usually watch TV \_\_\_\_\_ it's time to go to bed.
- You are going to write an article for a magazine called **My favourite day**. Write four paragraphs. First, look at the questions and make notes of what you can say.
  - What's your favourite day of the week? Why?
  - What do you usually do in the morning?
  - Where do you have lunch? What do you usually do after lunch?
  - What do you usually do in the evening?
- Now write your article. Choose which of your ideas you want to use. Don't forget to use some of the **highlighted** words to link together your ideas.
- Check your article for mistakes. Show your article to another student. Find one thing in your partner's article that is the same for you.

◀ p.31

## My favourite day



**Cristina**,  
a university student  
from Madrid

**M**y favourite day of the week is Saturday, because it's the first day of the weekend!

I get up very early **during** the week, so on Saturday it's nice to get up late, and I always stay in bed **until** about 10.30. **Then** I usually go shopping with a friend. In Spain shops are closed on Sundays, so Saturday is the only day for shopping. We don't always buy anything, but we have fun just looking.

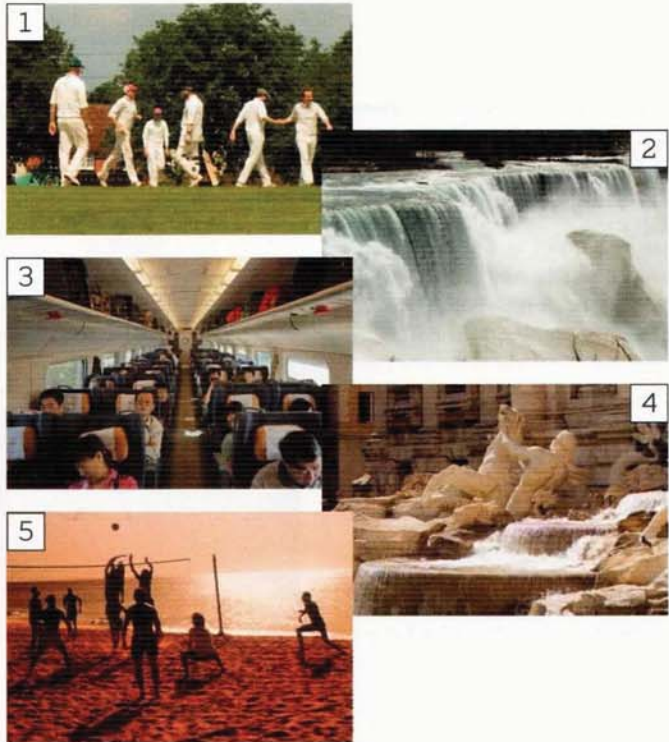
I often have lunch with my mother and my brother. It's great because my mum is a really good cook and she always makes things we like, and my brother and I have time to talk about our week. **After** lunch I sometimes study **from** about 4.00 **to** 6.00, especially if I have exams.

In the evening I usually go out with my friends. We often go to the cinema, and then we have a pizza or tapas. I never go to bed **before** 1.00, or sometimes later.



### 4 SOCIAL NETWORKING

a Alain is travelling round the world. He writes posts and puts photos from different places on a social networking site. Read his posts and match them to the photos. What countries do you think he is in?



- A  I'm standing above Niagara Falls... Wow! Check out my photos!
- B  I'm sitting at a bar looking at the sunset and watching a game of beach volleyball. I have three more days here – paradise!
- C  I'm on the bullet train going to Mount Fuji. It's really fast – 300km an hour – just like the trains at home! ha ha ☺
- D  I'm having lunch at a little trattoria just one minute from the Trevi fountain. I have my three coins ready to throw in – but my wish is a secret...
- E  I'm watching a cricket match in the park in Oxford. A very strange sport – I think they're stopping to have tea now! Can you believe it?

b Imagine you are on holiday in your country or abroad. Write four different posts of about 20–25 words saying what you're doing.

c Check your posts for mistakes.

### 5 AN INFORMAL EMAIL

To practise your English you can write to a 'penfriend' in another country. You can find penfriend websites on the internet.

a Read the email. Then cover it. Can you remember what information Chiara gives in the three main paragraphs?

**From:** Chiara [chiararossi@hitmail.com]  
**To:** Stefan [stefan7541200@moebius.ch]  
**Subject:** Hi from Italy!

Hi Stefan

My name's Chiara. I'm 19, and I'm from Milan, in Italy. I'm a receptionist at a hotel. I'm studing English becuse I need it for my job.

I live with my parents and my brother and sister. My father is an arkitekt and my mother works in a clothes shop. My brother and sister are at school.

I don't have very much free time because I work six days a week. I usualy go shoping on my day off. In the evening I like listening to music, or chatting to freinds. I really like hip hop – do you like it?

Please write soon.

Best wishes  
Chiara

b Look at the six underlined spelling mistakes. Can you spell these words?

**Informal emails**

beginning: *Hi + name*

middle: *Use contractions, e.g. I'm from Milan.*

end: *Best wishes, or Love (for a good friend)*

c You are going to write a similar email to your teacher. First, make notes about the following information.

Paragraph 1	Your name, age, and where you are from. What you do, and why you are studying English.
Paragraph 2	Who you live with. Your family.
Paragraph 3	What you like doing in your free time.

d Now write your email. Use your notes and the language in the information box.

e Check your email for mistakes.



## 6 DESCRIBING YOUR HOME

- a Read the website and the description of a flat in London. Would you like to stay there?
- b Number the information in the order it comes in the description.
- Details about some of the rooms
  - How far it is from the city centre
  - What floor the flat is on
  - What rooms there are
  - What services there are nearby
  - What you can see from the flat
  - Where it is
- c Look at the information about *so*.

### so

*There's a sofa bed in the study, so you can use it as an extra bedroom.*

We can use *so* to express a result or consequence, e.g.

*I was very tired, so I went to bed early.*

*My office is near my house, so I walk to work.*

- d You are going to write a description of your house or flat for the website. First, make notes on the topics in **b**.
- e Now write your description. Choose which of your ideas you want to use. Don't forget to say where you would like to go.
- f Check your description for mistakes. Show it to other students. Whose house or flat would you like to stay in?

◀ p.63

## house swap

[Home](#) | [How it works](#) | [Search](#) | [News and views](#) | [Join our community](#) | [Help](#)

Do you want a cheap holiday? Write a description of your house or flat, and say where you want to go. Post the description on our website, and find someone to swap homes with.

### My home

#### Flat in north London

My flat is in a quiet street in Hampstead, north-west London. It's on the first floor. It has two bedrooms, two bathrooms, a living room, a study, and a kitchen. The kitchen is quite big and there's a table and chairs so you can eat there. There's a sofa bed in the study, so you can use it as an extra bedroom. The bedrooms have a great view and you can see many London landmarks like the London Eye and St Paul's Cathedral. The flat doesn't have a garden, but it's very near Hampstead Heath, a beautiful big park. It's a 5-minute walk from shops, and bus and underground stations, and about a 30-minute train ride from Oxford Street in the centre of London.



**Where I want to go**  
San Francisco, Siena,  
Palma de Majorca



## 7 A FORMAL EMAIL

- a Read the advertisement and Pascal's email. Complete the email with the words in the list.

about confirm Dear double from  
hope Regards reservation would

- b Look at the information box and then write a similar email to the White Cottage Bed and Breakfast.

- Decide how many nights you want to stay and the kind of room you need.
- Ask an *Is there / Are there...?* question.

### Formal emails (e.g. to a hotel or Bed and Breakfast, a language school, etc.)

#### Beginning

Dear Mr / Mrs / Ms + surname, or  
Dear Sir / Madam if you don't know the person's name

Use a comma (,) (or nothing), NOT a colon (:)  
Dear Mr Brown, NOT *Dear Mr Brown:*

#### Middle

Don't use contractions.  
*I would like to make a reservation*  
NOT *I'd like to...*

#### End

*Regards*  
Your first name + surname

### The White Cottage Bed and Breakfast in West Bexington, Dorset

Mark and Diana Buckingham and their family welcome you to their 200-year-old country home in a small village in Dorset.

Two double bedrooms, one single, and a family suite  TV  WiFi



### The White Cottage – reservation

From: Pascal Mercier [pascal80@gmail.com]

To: thewhitecottage@greentomato.co.uk

<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Mr and Mrs Buckingham,  
I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ like to make a <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for a <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ room  
and a single room for two nights, <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ 24th to 26th June.  
We <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to arrive by car at <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ 5.00 in the  
afternoon on the 24th. Is there a place where we can park near  
your house?  
Could you please <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the reservation?  
<sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Pascal Mercier



# Listening

1 13))

- 1 A A cheese and tomato sandwich, please.  
B That's 3 euros and 20 cents.
- 2 A So Anna, your classes are on Tuesday and Thursday mornings.  
B *Que?* Sorry?
- 3 British Airways flight to Madrid is now boarding at gate number 9.  
A Where to, madam?  
B Manchester Road, please. Number 16.
- 5 A Here's your key, sir. Room 12.  
B Thank you.
- 6 A Here we are.  
B Oh no. It's closed.  
A Look, it says 'Closed on Mondays'!

1 29))

- 1 The train waiting at platform 13 is the Eurostar to Paris.
- 2 A Excuse me! How far is it to Dublin?  
B It's about 40 kilometres.  
B Thanks a lot.
- 3 15 love.
- 4 Will all passengers on flight BA234 to New York please go to gate 60 immediately.  
5 A How much is that?  
B A pizza and two cokes. That's 17 euros.
- 6 A What's your address?  
B It's 80 Park Road.  
A Sorry? What number?  
B 80, 8 oh.
- 7 **Teacher** OK. Can you be quiet, please? Open your books on page 90.  
**Student 1** What page?  
**Student 2** Page 90.

1 39))

- Receptionist** Hello. Are you a new student?  
**Darly** Yes, I am.  
**Receptionist** Sit down, please. I'm the receptionist and my name's Mark. I'm just going to ask you a few questions.  
**Darly** OK.  
**Receptionist** Right. What's your first name?  
**Darly** Darly.  
**Receptionist** How do you spell that?  
**Darly** D-A-R-L-Y  
**Receptionist** D-A-R-L-Y?  
**Darly** Yes, that's right.  
**Receptionist** And what's your surname?  
**Darly** Bezerra.  
**Receptionist** Bezerra. Is that B-E-Z-E-R-A?  
**Darly** B-E-Z-E-double R-A.  
**Receptionist** B-E-Z-E-double R-A. OK. Where are you from?  
**Darly** I'm from Brazil.  
**Receptionist** Where in Brazil?  
**Darly** From Rio.  
**Receptionist** And how old are you?  
**Darly** I'm 20.

**Receptionist** What's your address?

**Darly** In Rio?

**Receptionist** Yes.

**Darly** It's 350 Avenida Princesa Isabel.

**Receptionist** That's 350 Avenida Princesa Isabel.

**Darly** Yes.

**Receptionist** What's your postcode?

**Darly** Sorry?

**Receptionist** The postcode, you know, a number?

**Darly** Ah yes. It's 22011-010.

**Receptionist** 22011-010. Great. What's your email address?

**Darly** It's dbezerra@mail.com.

**Receptionist** And what's your phone number?

**Darly** My mobile number or my home number in Rio?

**Receptionist** Both – home and mobile.

**Darly** My phone number in Rio is 55 – that's the code for Brazil – 219 560733.

**Receptionist** 55 219 560733.

**Darly** Yes, that's right. And my mobile number is 07621 3784511. It's an English mobile.

**Receptionist** 07621 3784511. That's great, Darly. Thank you. OK, so you're in level 6. Your first class is on Monday.

1 44))

**Rob** Hi. My name's Rob Walker. I live here in London, I work in London, and I write about London! I work for a magazine called *London 24seven*. I write about life in London. The people, the theatre, the restaurants... It's fun! I love London. It's a great city.

**Jenny** Hi. My name's Jenny Zielinski. I'm from New York. The number one city in the world. I'm the assistant editor of a magazine, *New York 24seven*. I'm the new assistant editor. But this week, I'm on a business trip to London. This is my first time in the UK. It's very exciting!

1 48))

**Waitress** Is your tea OK?

**Jenny** Yes, thank you. It's very quiet this evening.

**Waitress** Yes, very relaxing! Are you on holiday?

**Jenny** No, I'm here on business.

**Waitress** Where are you from?

**Jenny** I'm from New York. What about you?

**Waitress** I'm from Budapest, in Hungary.

**Jenny** Really? Oh, sorry.

**Waitress** No problem.

**Jenny** Hello?

**Rob** Is that Jennifer?

**Jenny** Yes.

**Rob** This is Rob. Rob Walker... From *London 24seven*?

**Jenny** Oh, Rob, yes, of course. Hi.

**Rob** Hi. How are you?

**Jenny** Oh, I'm fine, thanks. A little tired, that's all.

**Rob** I can meet you at the hotel tomorrow morning. Is nine OK for you?

**Jenny** That's perfect.

**Rob** Great. OK, see you tomorrow at nine.

**Jenny** Thanks. See you then. Bye.

**Waitress** Would you like another tea?

**Jenny** No, thanks. It's time for bed.

**Waitress** Good night, and enjoy your stay.

**Jenny** Good night.

1 55))

- 1 I have a big table, and on the table I have a computer and a printer, pens and pieces of paper, er, photos, and a lamp. Lots of things. My table isn't tidy. It's very untidy.
- 2 On my desk I have a lamp, a phone, books, a laptop, a photo of my family, pens and pencils, and a lot of pieces of paper. I think my desk is tidy. Not very tidy, but tidy.
- 3 On my desk I have a computer, a lamp, a diary, a Spanish-English dictionary, DVD, and some pens. Oh, and tissues. At the moment my desk is very tidy.

1 70))

**Receptionist** Good evening, sir. Good evening, madam.

**Dad** Good evening. Can we have two double rooms, please?

**Receptionist** Do you have a reservation?

**Dad** No, we don't.

**Receptionist** I'm sorry, sir. The hotel is full.

**Mum** Oh no!

**Dad** Come on. Let's go. I know another hotel near here.

**Policeman** Excuse me, sir. Is this your car?

**Dad** Yes, it is. What's the problem?

**Policeman** This is no parking, sir. Look at the sign.

**Dad** I'm very sorry.

**Policeman** Can I see your driving licence, please?

2 10))

**Announcer** And now on Radio 4, His job, her job.

**Presenter** Good evening and welcome again to the jobs quiz, His job, her job. And our team tonight are David, a teacher...

**David** Hello.

**Presenter** ...Kate, who's unemployed...

**Kate** Hi.

**Presenter** ...and Lorna, who's a writer.

**Lorna** Good evening.



**Presenter** And our first guest tonight is...

**Wayne** Wayne.

**Presenter** Hello, Wayne. Welcome to the programme. What's your wife's name, Wayne?

**Wayne** Her name's Tanya.

**Presenter** Tanya? Nice name. OK team, you have one minute to ask Wayne questions about his job and then one minute to ask him about Tanya's job, starting now. Let's have your first question.

**David** Hi, Wayne. Do you work in an office?

**Wayne** No, I don't.

**Lorna** Do you work in the evening?

**Wayne** It depends. Yes, sometimes.

**Kate** Do you make things?

**Wayne** No, I don't.

**Lorna** Do you wear a uniform or special clothes?

**Wayne** Er, yes – I wear special clothes.

**Kate** Do you drive in your job?

**Wayne** No, I don't.

**Lorna** Do you work with other people?

**Wayne** Yes, I do. Ten people.

**Kate** Do you have special qualifications?

**Wayne** Qualifications? No, I don't.

**David** Do you speak foreign languages?

**Wayne** No, only English.

**Presenter** You only have time for one more question team.

**David** Er, do you earn a lot of money?

**Wayne** Yes, I do.

**Presenter** Your time's up...

## 2 11))

**Presenter** Now you have a minute to ask Wayne about Tanya's job.

**Kate** Wayne, does Tanya work outside?

**Wayne** It depends. Outside and inside.

**Lorna** Does she work at the weekend?

**Wayne** Yes, she does.

**Kate** Does she work with computers?

**Wayne** No, she doesn't.

**David** Does she wear a uniform or special clothes?

**Wayne** Yes, she does. She wears special clothes.

**Kate** Does she travel?

**Wayne** Yes, she does. A lot.

**Lorna** Does she earn a lot of money?

**Wayne** Yes, she does. A lot.

**Presenter** That's time. OK team...

## 2 12))

**Presenter** OK team. So, what's Wayne's job?

**Kate** OK, so you wear special clothes, you work with ten other people, you earn a lot of money. Are you a footballer, Wayne?

**Wayne** Yes, I am.

**Presenter** Very good! And Tanya's job?

**David** Let's see. She works outside and inside. She works at the weekend. She doesn't work with computers. She wears special clothes. She travels a lot. We think she's a flight attendant.

**Presenter** Is that right, Wayne?

**Wayne** No, that's wrong. Tanya is a model.

## 2 19))

**Kevin** Do you like Star Wars?

**Samantha** No, I don't.

**Kevin** Why not? It's a fantastic film.

**Samantha** I don't like science fiction.

**Kevin** What kind of films do you like?

**Samantha** I love foreign films, French, Italian, Spanish.

**Kevin** Oh.

**Samantha** My salad's very nice.

**Kevin** Good. My burger's nice too.

**Samantha** What kind of music do you like?

**Kevin** Music? I love heavy metal. What about you?

**Samantha** Opera.

**Kevin** Opera – that's not really my thing!

**Kevin** What do you do at the weekend?

**Samantha** I go to the cinema, I go to restaurants, I cook. I love good food. And you?

**Kevin** Well, I don't cook! I meet friends and we play video games.

**Samantha** You meet friends and you play video games. Wow.

**Kevin** Do you want another drink?

**Samantha** Oh, excuse me. Hi. Oh? Why?

Now? OK. See you in a minute. Sorry Kevin. I need to go. Nice to meet you. Bye.

**Kevin** Oh. Bye.

**Waiter** The bill, sir.

**Kevin** The bill! Hey, Samantha. Wait!

## 2 25))

**Rob** Erm... Jennifer?

**Jenny** Rob?

**Rob** Yes, hello. Nice to meet you, Jennifer.

**Jenny** Call me Jenny. Good to meet you, too.

**Rob** Welcome to London. Am I late?

**Jenny** Erm... just a little.

**Rob** What time is it?

**Jenny** Nine fifteen.

**Rob** I'm really sorry. The traffic is terrible today.

**Jenny** No problem.

**Rob** How are you? How's the hotel?

**Jenny** The hotel's very nice. But breakfast isn't great. I'd like a good cup of coffee. Not hotel coffee, real coffee.

**Rob** OK, let's get a coffee.

**Jenny** Do I have time? I have a meeting at nine-thirty.

**Rob** With Daniel?

**Jenny** Yes.

**Rob** Don't worry. We have lots of time, the office is very near. So, Jenny, where do you live in New York?

## 2 28))

**Rob** Here we are. This is the office. And this is Karen.

**Jenny** Hello, Karen.

**Rob** Karen, this is Jennifer Zielinski from the New York office.

**Karen** Hello, Jennifer.

**Jenny** Nice to meet you.

**Rob** Karen is our administrator. We all depend on her.

**Karen** Don't listen to Rob.

**Rob** But it's true!

**Karen** Is this your first time in the UK, Jennifer?

**Jenny** Yes, it is. But it isn't my first time in Europe. I have family in Poland.

**Karen** Really? And where do you live in New York?

**Jenny** In Manhattan. Do you know New York?

**Karen** Yes. My sister lives in Brooklyn.

**Jenny** I have family in Brooklyn, too. Where does your sister live?

**Daniel** Jennifer!

**Jenny** Daniel?

**Daniel** How nice to meet you, at last. Would you like something to drink? Tea, coffee, water?

**Jenny** No, I'm fine, thanks.

**Daniel** Great. Oh, Karen. What time is my next meeting?

**Karen** At twelve o'clock.

**Daniel** That's good, we have time. OK, come into my office, Jennifer.

**Jenny** Thank you.

**Daniel** Talk to you later, Rob.

**Rob** Yeah. Sure.

## 2 35))

**Anna** Who's that?

**Isabel** That's my boyfriend, Alex.

**Anna** He's good-looking. How old is he?

**Isabel** Twenty-six.

**Anna** What does he do?

**Isabel** He's a policeman.

**Anna** Really? Does he like it?

**Isabel** Yes, he loves it. And this is my dad.

**Anna** He looks very young.

**Isabel** Well, he's fifty-five this year.

**Anna** He doesn't look fifty-five! Is that your mother?

**Isabel** No, that's Gloria, my stepmother.

**Anna** Is she nice?

**Isabel** Yes, she's great. She's a hairdresser – she does my hair for free!

**Anna** Oh, that's good. Who's that?

**Isabel** That's Natalie.

**Anna** Who's she?

**Isabel** My brother's girlfriend.

**Anna** She's pretty!

**Isabel** Do you think so?

**Anna** Yes. Don't you like her?

**Isabel** Not very much. She thinks she's very intelligent, but she isn't really.

**Anna** What does she do?

**Isabel** She's at university. She studies French – but she can't speak it very well...

## 2 40))

**Interviewer** What time do you get up in the morning?

**Amelia** Me levanto a las seis y media. Nunca me quiero levantar porque es tan temprano. I get up at half past six. I never want to get up because it's very early.

**Interviewer** Do you have breakfast?

**Amelia** Yes, a quick breakfast, and then I go to school.

**Interviewer** How do you go to school?



**Amelia** By bus. We have these yellow school buses – we call them liebres.

**Interviewer** What time do you start school?

**Amelia** At 8 o'clock. In the first lesson everyone is really sleepy.

**Interviewer** How many lessons do you have?

**Amelia** In the morning we usually have five but sometimes six.

**Interviewer** What time do you have lunch?

**Amelia** At 1 o'clock.

**Interviewer** That's a very long morning!

**Amelia** Yes, it is. We're very hungry at lunchtime.

**Interviewer** Where do you have lunch?

**Amelia** We have lunch at school in the cafeteria. We only have fifty minutes so we don't have much time to relax. We just eat our food and then run to the next lesson.

**Interviewer** How many lessons do you have in the afternoon?

**Amelia** On a good day only three, on a bad day five. After the second lesson everybody is tired and we don't concentrate on what the teacher is telling us.

**Interviewer** What time does school finish?

**Amelia** At half past five.

**Interviewer** Do you go home then?

**Amelia** It depends. On Mondays and Wednesdays I go to extra classes to prepare for university entrance exams, and on Tuesdays and Thursdays I have basketball practice.

**Interviewer** What do you do when you get home?

**Amelia** I just want to relax but it's impossible. I have homework and exams so I need to study! So I sit down at my desk and start working again. After dinner I go back to my room and study until 11 o'clock, or sometimes later.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed?

**Amelia** About half past eleven. I lie in bed and think about the next day and the lessons I have. Luckily, it's Friday today! No school tomorrow!

### 2 57))

GARY

Gary (sings)

**Judge 1** Very nice Gary.

**Judge 2** Yes, I like it. Well done.

JUSTIN

Justin (sings)

**Judge 1** In a word... 'terrible!'

**Judge 2** Justin, you have a very pretty face, but I'm sorry, you can't sing!

NAOMI

Naomi (sings)

**Judge 1** Thank you Naomi. Very nice.

**Judge 2** Naomi, you have a beautiful voice, but I can't hear the feeling.

**Judge 1** OK. Justin and Naomi. Thank you very much, but no thank you. Gary, congratulations. See you on the show next week.

**Gary** Fantastic! That's great. Thank you.

### 3 7))

**Interviewer** Do you have a problem with noisy neighbours, Rebecca?

**Rebecca** No, I don't, not at all. But sometimes my neighbours have problems with me! I live in a block of small flats and the house rules here are really strict.

**Interviewer** What kind of house rules do you have?

**Rebecca** Well, for example, during the week you can't make noise between 12.30 and two o'clock because this is when young children are asleep and the same is true after ten o'clock at night. So, for example, after ten o'clock you can't listen to loud music without headphones, or play a musical instrument. I think it's because people in Switzerland get up early in the morning, so they go to bed very early.

**Interviewer** Can you watch TV after ten o'clock?

**Rebecca** Yes, you can, just not really loudly. So, I watch TV, but with the volume low and the windows closed so that's not a problem. But the problem is I can't use my bathroom, because the water makes a noise, and my bathroom is next to my neighbour's bedroom.

**Interviewer** So you can't have a shower or a bath?

**Rebecca** No, not after ten o'clock. This isn't true in all flats in Switzerland, but in my flat it is. Maybe because the flats are small.

**Interviewer** What about at the weekend?

**Rebecca** On Saturday the rules are the same. No noise after ten o'clock in the evening.

**Interviewer** What happens if you want to have a party?

**Rebecca** You can have a party but the music can't be loud after ten.

**Interviewer** What happens if you make a lot of noise after ten?

**Rebecca** Well, the neighbours complain and if it's really loud, they can call the police.

**Interviewer** What about on Sunday?

**Rebecca** Sunday is a day of rest in Switzerland so you can't make any noise in your flat at all. For example, in my building you can't move furniture, or put a picture on the wall, or turn on the washing machine.

**Interviewer** What do you think of these rules?

**Rebecca** Well, I like the rules that control noise during the week and on Sunday. I think it's a good idea. But I think they need to be a bit more flexible on Saturdays. I mean if a party is still a little loud after ten, I don't think you need to call the police.

**Interviewer** Does that really happen?

**Rebecca** Yes, it happened to me.

### 3 10))

The best thing about the weather in London is that it's never extreme. It isn't usually very hot or very cold. In the summer it's sometimes sunny and sometimes cloudy, with temperatures of about 22 degrees. And of course it sometimes rains.

In winter the temperature is usually between zero and ten degrees. It can be windy and cold but it hardly ever snows.

In spring and in autumn the weather is very changeable – you can have all the four seasons in one day! It can be sunny in the morning, cloudy at lunchtime, raining in the afternoon, and then cold and windy in the evening. I always tell tourists to take their sunglasses and their umbrellas when they go out!

But one thing you don't often see these days in London is fog. A lot of tourists come to London and say 'Where's the fog? London is always foggy in films!' Well, it's true that, in the past, that is until the 1950s. London was a very foggy city because the air was really dirty. But today the air is clean and it's hardly ever foggy.

### 3 15))

**Rob** Hey, Jenny!

**Jenny** Oh hi, Rob. Is that coffee for me?

**Rob** Yes. A double espresso.

**Jenny** Oh wow, thanks. That's really nice of you.

**Rob** No problem. Do you have a meeting with Daniel?

**Jenny** Yes, another meeting. And you?

**Rob** I'm going to the office, too. I have an interview in twenty minutes.

**Jenny** Oh really? With who?

**Rob** A theatre director.

**Jenny** Sounds interesting.

**Rob** What time is your meeting with Daniel?

**Jenny** At half past nine.

**Rob** Ugh!

**Jenny** Oh no. Are you OK? I'm so sorry!

**Rob** I'm fine!

**Jenny** I'm really sorry. You can't wear that shirt to an interview!

**Rob** Don't worry, there's a clothes shop over there. I can buy a new one.

**Jenny** OK. I can help you choose one.

**Jenny** Oh, that's my phone. Sorry, I need to answer this. See you in there?

**Rob** OK.

### 3 19))

**Eddie** So, Jenny, what do you think of London?

**Jenny** I love it, Eddie! It's so cool!

**Eddie** What about the people in the office?

**Jenny** They're really nice. And they're very polite!

**Eddie** What are you doing right now? You aren't in the office. I can hear traffic.

**Jenny** Right now? I am standing outside a men's clothing store.

**Eddie** You're what?

**Jenny** I'm waiting for Rob.

**Eddie** Who's Rob? Do you have a new boyfriend already?

**Jenny** Don't be silly. He's just a guy from the office. He's buying a new shirt.

**Eddie** Wait a minute. So you're waiting for a guy named Rob outside a men's clothing store?

**Jenny** Stop it. I don't have time to explain it all now. Oh, here he is now. I have to go.



**Eddie** OK. Have fun.

**Jenny** Bye, Eddie. Love you.

**Rob** So, what do you think?

**Jenny** You cannot be serious!

**Rob** What's wrong? You don't like my new shirt?

**Jenny** No way! You can't wear that to an interview! Come on, let's go back into the store and change it.

**Rob** OK.

### 3 33)))

**Interviewer** What's your favourite time of day?

**Martin** It depends. During the week it's seven in the evening, because that's when I get home from work and when I can relax. But at the weekend my favourite time is breakfast time. I have a big breakfast, and I have time to read the papers and listen to the radio.

**Interviewer** What's your favourite day of the week?

**Martin** My favourite day of the week is Friday, because then I know the weekend is near.

**Interviewer** What's your favourite month?

**Martin** Probably May. It's when the weather starts to get warm and the evenings are long.

**Interviewer** What's your favourite season?

**Martin** Spring, because it means that winter is finally over. I love cycling, and spring is a great time for cycling – not too hot and not too cold.

**Interviewer** What's your favourite public holiday?

**Martin** Probably New Year's Eve, because you don't need to worry about buying presents or cooking a big lunch, and everybody's in a good mood.

### 3 49)))

1 He was an English writer.

He was born in the 16th century.

He was married with three children.

He was born in Stratford upon Avon.

He is famous for his plays, for example *Hamlet* and *Macbeth*.

2 She was born in Los Angeles in 1926.

She was a famous actress.

She was blonde and very beautiful.

Her real name was Norma Jeane Baker.

There is a famous painting of her by Andy Warhol.

### 3 52)))

... and finally on the news today the story of two football fans who missed the big match.

Last week Chelsea played Arsenal at Chelsea's famous stadium, Stamford Bridge in west London. It was the match that football fans all over the world wanted to watch.

Charles Spencer's daughter and a friend were among the lucky people with tickets. The girls were in Althorp, which is about 140 km from London, and they decided to go by taxi. But when the taxi stopped in a small village, it was clear that something was wrong. They were in Stamford Bridge, but not at the Chelsea

stadium. The driver had typed Stamford Bridge into his satnav. But unfortunately, Stamford Bridge is also a small village in the north of England – and that's where they were! Of course, they missed the match.

### 3 60)))

**Interviewer** When was your memorable night?

**David** Te puedo decir exactamente, fue el once de julio del dos mil diez. I can tell you exactly, it was the 11th July 2010.

**Interviewer** Why do you remember the date?

**David** Because it was the final of the Football World Cup, Spain against Holland.

**Interviewer** Where were you?

**David** Well, I'm a flight attendant and that day I was in Acapulco in Mexico.

**Interviewer** Who were you with?

**David** I was with three other Spanish flight attendants.

**Interviewer** Where did you go to watch the match?

**David** We didn't go out. We watched the match in the hotel bar.

**Interviewer** And what did you wear to watch the match?

**David** We wore Spanish football shirts which we bought in a shop and we also had red and yellow scarves.

**Interviewer** Tell me about the night. What did you do?

**David** Well, the match was on in the afternoon Mexican time. We went down to the hotel bar early to get a good seat. There was a big screen. The bar was full of Spanish tourists. There was a great atmosphere.

**Interviewer** And Spain won the match, of course.

**David** Yes. It wasn't a good match, but when Spain got their winning goal everybody shouted and jumped up. It was amazing! When the match finished we all went out. We wanted to celebrate. We went to another bar near the beach and it was full of Spanish people. Everyone was really happy. We had a great party!

**Interviewer** What was the weather like? Do you remember?

**David** Yes, it was a warm night. About 20 degrees, I think.

**Interviewer** What time did you get back to your hotel?

**David** I can't remember exactly but very late, about three in the morning. Luckily, I had a free day the next day so I didn't need to get up early.

**Interviewer** Why was this night so memorable?

**David** First, of course, because Spain won their first World Cup, but also because of the circumstances – we were very far away from Spain, thousands of kilometres away in another country, but we all felt very Spanish that night!

### 3 64)))

**Rob** So, Jenny, we have a free morning. What do you want to do?

**Jenny** Well, you're the expert on London life! What do you suggest?

**Rob** Well, we can go cycling.

**Jenny** I don't have a bike.

**Rob** We can rent bikes. It's easy.

**Jenny** That's cool.

**Rob** OK, great. So we can cycle through the parks, and you can see a bit of London. Oh, hang on. Uh oh. It's Daniel. Daniel, hi!

**Daniel** Hi, Rob. You need to do an interview this morning, with an artist. He's at the Tate Modern.

**Rob** Can I do the interview on Monday?

**Daniel** Sorry, he can only do this morning.

**Rob** OK, send me the details.

**Daniel** Thank you very much, Rob.

**Rob** I'm sorry.

**Jenny** That's OK, I understand. Work is work!

**Rob** But I can meet you later, outside the Tate Modern. It's on the South Bank.

**Jenny** I can find it. I have a map, I can cycle there.

**Rob** Let's meet at twelve o'clock then.

**Jenny** Great.

### 3 68)))

**Rob** Sorry about the weather.

**Jenny** Yeah... but what a view! It's a great bridge too.

**Rob** It's the Millennium Bridge. It's not for cars, only for people. It was the first new bridge over the Thames in 100 years.

**Jenny** You sound like a tour guide!

**Rob** Sorry... I interviewed the architect last year. So what would you like to visit?

**Jenny** What is there to see?

**Rob** Well, we could see the Tate Modern first as we're here, and then we could go to the Globe Theatre. Do you like Shakespeare?

**Jenny** Not really. I studied too much Shakespeare in college. It's Daniel. Sorry. Hi, Daniel.

**Daniel** Hi, Jennifer. How's your free day? Are you enjoying London?

**Jenny** Absolutely. It's fantastic.

**Daniel** Listen, I have some free time today. Would you like to meet for lunch?

**Jenny** That's really nice of you, Daniel, but I'm sorry, I can't. I'm really far away from the office right now.

**Daniel** That's OK. No problem. Maybe another time?

**Jenny** Definitely. Bye.

**Rob** What did he want? Anything important?

**Jenny** Not at all. Hey, let's go inside the Tate Modern now.

**Rob** Yes, of course. There's a great restaurant on the top floor. The view is fantastic. The Tate Modern was a power station until 1981. Did you know that?

**Jenny** I didn't. Do you know anything else about the Tate Modern?

**Rob** Thank you for asking. I know a lot about it actually.

**Jenny** Oh, great!



46))

Then the inspector questioned Barbara Travers.

**Inspector** What did you do after dinner yesterday evening?

**Barbara** After dinner? I played cards with Gordon, and then I went to bed.

**Inspector** What time was that?

**Barbara** It was about half past eleven. I remember I looked at my watch.

**Inspector** Did you hear anything in your father's room?

**Barbara** No. I didn't hear anything.

**Inspector** Miss Travers, did you have any problems with your father?

**Barbara** No, I didn't have any problems with him at all. My father was a wonderful man and a wonderful father. I'm sorry, Inspector.

**Inspector** Don't worry, Miss Travers. No more questions.

47))

Next, the inspector questioned Gordon Smith.

**Inspector** What did you do after dinner, Gordon?

**Gordon** I played cards with Barbara. Then she went to bed.

**Inspector** Did you go to bed then?

**Gordon** No. I stayed in the sitting room and I had a glass of whisky. Then I went to bed.

**Inspector** What time was that?

**Gordon** I don't remember exactly. I didn't look at the time.

**Inspector** Did you hear anything during the night?

**Gordon** No, I didn't. I was very tired. I slept very well.

**Inspector** You and Mr Travers were business partners, weren't you?

**Gordon** Yes, that's right.

**Inspector** And it's a very good business I understand.

**Gordon** Yes, inspector, it is.

**Inspector** And now it is your business.

**Gordon** Listen, inspector, I did not kill Jeremy. He was my partner and he was my friend.

48))

Finally, the inspector questioned Claudia Simeone.

**Inspector** What did you do yesterday evening, after dinner?

**Claudia** I went to my room and I had a bath and I went to bed.

**Inspector** What time was that?

**Claudia** About 11 o'clock.

**Inspector** Did you hear anything?

**Claudia** Yes. I heard somebody go into Jeremy's room. It was about 12 o'clock.

**Inspector** Who was it?

**Claudia** It was Amanda, his wife.

**Inspector** Are you sure? Did you see her?

**Claudia** Well, no, I didn't see her. But I'm sure it was Amanda.

**Inspector** You were Mr Travers' secretary, Claudia.

**Claudia** Yes, I was.

**Inspector** Were you just his secretary?

**Claudia** What do you mean?

**Inspector** Were you in love with Mr Travers?

**Claudia** No, I wasn't.

**Inspector** The truth please, Claudia.

**Claudia** Very well, inspector. Yes, I was in love with him and he said he was in love with me. He said he wanted to leave his wife – Amanda – and marry me. I was stupid. I believed him. He used me, inspector! I was very angry with him.

**Inspector** Did you kill him?

**Claudia** No, inspector, I loved Jeremy.

49))

Before dinner, Gordon had a drink with Jeremy in the library.

**Gordon** Cheers, Jeremy. Happy birthday.

**Jeremy** Ah, thanks, Gordon.

**Gordon** Listen, Jeremy, I want to talk to you about Barbara.

**Jeremy** Barbara? What's the problem?

**Gordon** It's not exactly a problem. I am in love with her, and I want to marry her.

**Jeremy** Marry Barbara? Marry my daughter! Are you crazy? Never! You don't love Barbara. You only want her money!

**Gordon** That's not true, Jeremy. I love her.

**Jeremy** Listen to me. If you marry Barbara, when I die all my money goes to Claudia.

**Gordon** To Claudia? To your secretary?

**Jeremy** Yes.

**Gordon** Is that your last word, Jeremy?

**Jeremy** Yes, it is.

**Amanda** Dinner everybody!

**Reader** At midnight Gordon was in the sitting room. He finished his whisky and went upstairs.

**Jeremy** Who is it? Gordon?

414))

**Barbara** Let's go upstairs. Follow me. Be careful. The ceiling is very low here.

**Leo** It's a very old house.

**Barbara** Yes, the house is three hundred years old. My family lived here for nearly eighty years. There are six bedrooms. This was my father's bedroom.

**Kim** Is there central heating in the house?

**Barbara** Yes, there is. Why do you ask? Are you cold?

**Kim** Yes, it's very cold in here.

**Leo** That's because we're from California.

**Barbara** Let's go and see the other bedrooms.

**Leo** Yes, of course.

**Leo** Well, what do you think, Kim? I love it! Don't you?

**Kim** I'm not sure. There's something about the house I don't like.

**Leo** Kim, it's perfect for the kids. Think of the garden. And it's a real authentic English country house. What do you say?

**Kim** I suppose so. If you're sure.

**Leo** I am sure! Mrs...er, Barbara. We want it. We want to rent the house.

**Barbara** Excellent.

**Leo** When can we move in?

**Barbara** As soon as you like.

415))

**Leo** Hello.

**Barman** Good evening, sir, madam. What would you like to drink?

**Leo** Do you have champagne?

**Barman** Yes, sir.

**Leo** Two glasses of champagne, please.

**Barman** Here you are!

**Leo** Cheers, Kim.

**Kim** Cheers. To our new house.

**Barman** You're Americans, aren't you?

**Leo** Yes, that's right. We're from California.

**Kim** We just rented the big house near here.

**Barman** Which house? The Travers family's house?

**Leo** Yes.

**Barman** Oh.

**Leo** Is something wrong?

**Barman** Who showed you the house?

**Kim** Barbara. The old lady who lived there before.

**Barman** Ahh, Barbara. Old Mr Travers' daughter. Some people thought that she was the one that did it. She never married, of course.

**Kim** The one who did what? What happened? Why did she never marry?

**Barman** Didn't she tell you?

**Leo** Tell us what?

**Barman** About the murder.

**Leo & Kim** Murder??

**Barman** Yes, Mr Travers was murdered in that house in 1958... in his bed.

**Kim** Oh, how horrible!

**Barman** The man who killed Mr Travers was Barbara's lover. The family never lived there again. They tried to sell the house, but nobody wanted to buy it. Not after a murder. That's why that house is always rented.

**Leo** Kim.

**Kim** Yes.

**Leo** Are you thinking what I'm thinking?

**Kim** Yes – I don't want to sleep in a house where somebody was murdered. Come on. Let's go to a hotel.

**Barman** Hey, your champagne! You didn't drink your champagne! Ah, well.

424))

I arrived at Gosforth Hall late in the evening. I don't believe in ghosts, but yes, I felt a little bit nervous. I checked in, and the receptionist gave me the key and showed me to my room.

I left my things in the room and came downstairs. There weren't many other guests in the hotel. There were only three. I sat in the lounge and I talked to the manager, Sara Daniels, about her hotel. Then I had a drink in the bar and at 12 o'clock I went upstairs to my room.

Room 11 was on the top floor. I opened the door and turned on the light.

It was a very big room, quite old, and yes, it was a bit spooky. There was an old TV on a table – but there wasn't a remote control. I turned on the TV.

There was a film on. I was happy to see that it wasn't a horror film. I decided to watch the



film, but I was tired after my long journey and after half an hour I went to sleep.

4 25 )))

**Stephen** In the middle of the night I suddenly woke up! I looked at my watch. It was two o'clock in the morning. The television was off! But how? There was no remote control, and I didn't get up and turn it off. The light was on, but suddenly the light went off too. Now I was scared! I couldn't see anything strange, but I could feel that there was somebody or something in the room. I got out of bed and turned on the light and TV again. Little by little I started to relax, and I went to sleep again. When I woke up it was morning. I had breakfast and checked out.

**Interviewer** So the question is, did you see the ghost?

**Stephen** No, I didn't see the ghost, but I definitely felt something or somebody in the room when I woke up in the night.

**Interviewer** Were you frightened?

**Stephen** Yes, I was! Very frightened!

**Interviewer** Would you like to spend another night in the hotel?

**Stephen** Definitely, yes.

**Interviewer** Why?

**Stephen** Well, I'm sure there was something strange in that room. I can't explain the television and the light. I want to go back because I want to see the ghost.

4 32 )))

**Presenter** Good afternoon and welcome to today's edition of Get Ready! Cook! And a big round of applause for today's contestants, Jack and Liz. Hello, Jack. So, do you like cooking?

**Jack** I love it. I cook dinner every evening at home.

**Presenter** How about you Liz?

**Liz** Yes, I'm the cook in my family too. I cook every day of course, but what I really like is cooking for friends at the weekend.

**Presenter** OK, so you know the rules. In the bag there are six ingredients, just six ingredients. You have an hour to cook three dishes, a starter, a main course, and a dessert. Apart from the ingredients in the bag you can also use basic ingredients like pasta, rice, eggs, sugar, salt, pepper, etc. OK? Are you ready? Let's open the bag. And today's ingredients are a chicken, some carrots, some onions, three oranges, some cream cheese, and some dark chocolate. OK, Jack and Liz. You have five minutes to decide what to make and then it's Get ready! Cook!

4 33 )))

**Presenter** Liz and Jack, you have two more minutes, so I hope you're nearly ready. OK, time's up, stop cooking now, please. OK Jack, what did you make?

**Jack** For the starter there's carrot and orange soup, for the main course I made chicken breasts filled with cream cheese, and for

dessert pancakes with chocolate sauce.

**Presenter** That all looks delicious. And you Liz?

**Liz** I made a carrot and onion salad with orange dressing, then for the main course pasta with creamy chicken sauce and for dessert chocolate and orange mousse.

**Presenter** It all looks good too. But now, the moment of truth. Let's taste your dishes...

4 34 )))

**Presenter** Right Jack, let's try your soup. Mmm, that's delicious. It's a great combination, carrot and orange. Is there any onion in the soup?

**Jack** Yes, one onion.

**Presenter** It's very good, but next time maybe you could add a little cream, not much, just a little. OK, now the chicken. Mmm, that's lovely. Not very original, but very tasty. And finally the pancakes. They look beautiful... and they taste fantastic. Now Liz, let's try your dishes. The salad first. Mmm, it's nice, but the taste of onion is very strong. How many onions did you use?

**Liz** Three.

**Presenter** I think perhaps two are enough for this salad. OK, the pasta. Mmm, it's very good but it needs a bit more salt and pepper. And finally the mousse. That's a beautiful mousse, Liz.

**Liz** Thank you.

**Presenter** Mmm, and it tastes fantastic, absolutely delicious. Well, congratulations to you both. I loved all your dishes – but only one of you can win – and today's winner is... Jack!

4 42 )))

**Comper** Question 1. What is the approximate population of the UK? Is it a 42 million, b 52 million, or c 62 million?

**Contestant 1** I think it's c, 62 million.

**Comper** c is the right answer! Question 2. How many calories are there in a Big Mac? Is it a 670, b 485, or c 305?

**Contestant 2** I think it's a, 670.

**Comper** Final answer?

**Contestant 2** Final answer, 670.

**Comper** I'm sorry, the right answer is b. A Big Mac has 485 calories. And Question 3. How far is it from New York City to Los Angeles? Is it a about 4,000 km, b about 2,500 km, or c about 5,000 km?

**Contestant 3** About 4,000 km.

**Comper** Are you sure?

**Contestant 3** Yes. I'm sure.

**Comper** a is the right answer!

4 45 )))

**Presenter** Good evening. Welcome to Quiz Night. Tonight's show comes from Dublin. And our first contestant is Colleen from London. Hi Colleen. Are you nervous?

**Colleen** Yes, a bit.

**Presenter** Well, just try to relax. The rules are the same as always. I'm going to read you some sentences, and you have ten

seconds to say if the sentence is true or false. If you get the first answer right, you win 500 euros. Then for each correct answer you double your money, so if you get the second answer right, you win 1,000 euros, and for the third correct answer you win 2,000 euros. For eight correct answers you win 64,000 euros. But if you get an answer wrong, you lose all the money. Remember you can also phone a friend, so if you're not sure about one of the answers, you can phone your friend to help you. Is that OK, Colleen?

**Colleen** Yes, OK.

4 46 )))

**Presenter** OK Colleen, first question for 500 euros. The North Pole is colder than the South Pole. True or false?

**Colleen** The North Pole is colder than the South Pole. Er, false.

**Presenter** Correct. The South Pole is much colder, because it's much higher than the North Pole. In the summer the average temperature at the North Pole is zero degrees, but at the South Pole it's minus 26. Now, for 1,000 euros, carrots are sweeter than tomatoes. True or false?

**Colleen** Er, I think it's true.

**Presenter** Correct. It's true. Carrots are about five percent sugar, but tomatoes don't have any sugar at all. Right, for 2,000 euros, a proton is heavier than an electron.

**Colleen** I think it's true.

**Presenter** Correct. A proton is more than 1,800 times heavier than an electron. Next, for 4,000 euros, The White House is bigger than Buckingham Palace. True or false?

**Colleen** The White House is bigger than Buckingham Palace. Er, false.

**Presenter** Correct. Buckingham Palace has 775 rooms, but the White House has only 132 rooms. Next, for 8,000 euros, oranges are healthier than strawberries. True or false?

**Colleen** Er, true. No, er, false.

**Presenter** Do you want to phone a friend?

**Colleen** No, I think it's false.

**Presenter** Correct. An orange has 70 milligrams of vitamin C, but a cup of strawberries, a normal serving, has 98. OK, for 16,000 euros, female mosquitoes are more dangerous than male mosquitoes.

**Colleen** Er, true.

**Presenter** Correct. Female mosquitoes are the ones that bite. Male mosquitoes don't bite. OK Colleen, for 32,000 euros, in judo a green belt is better than a blue belt. True or false?

**Colleen** Er, I'm sure that's false. My brother does judo. False.

**Presenter** Correct. The order of belts in the lower stages of judo is white for a beginner, then yellow, orange, green, blue, brown, and black. And finally, the last question. Be very careful, Colleen. If you get it right, you win 64,000 euros, but if you get it wrong, you get nothing. Are you ready?

**Colleen** Yes, ready.



**Presenter** OK, for 64,000 euros, hepatitis A is worse than hepatitis B. True or false?

**Colleen** Er... er...

**Presenter** Quickly, Colleen, your time is nearly up.

**Colleen** I want to phone a friend.

**Presenter** Right, Colleen. So, who do you want to call?

**Colleen** Kevin.

**Presenter** Is he your boyfriend?

**Colleen** Yes, he is.

**Presenter** OK then. Hello, is that Kevin?

**Kevin** Yes, it is.

**Presenter** I'm phoning from Quiz Night. Colleen needs some help. You have 30 seconds, Kevin. Here she is.

**Colleen** Hi Kevin.

**Kevin** Hi Colleen.

**Colleen** Listen, Kevin. It's the last question. Hepatitis A is worse than hepatitis B. True or false?

**Kevin** Er, I think it's true. Hepatitis A, yes, that's the serious one.

**Colleen** Are you sure?

**Kevin** Yes, definitely!

**Presenter** Time's up. OK Colleen, true or false?

**Colleen** True.

**Presenter** Final answer?

**Colleen** Final answer. True.

**Presenter** I'm sorry Colleen, it's false.

Hepatitis B is much more serious, you can die from it. You had 32,000 euros, but now you go home with nothing.

**Colleen** Ooh, Kevin. You wait until I see him...

#### 4 49))

**Jenny** Thanks for showing me around London yesterday. I had a great time.

**Rob** Me too. So, what did you do last night?

**Jenny** Nothing really. I had a lot of work to do. Emails, phone calls... What did you do?

**Rob** I wrote my article about the artist that I interviewed yesterday morning.

**Jenny** Can I see it?

**Rob** Sure, it's on my laptop. Hang on a second. There.

**Jenny** Sorry. Hi, Eddie. Thanks! But listen, I can't talk right now. I'm in the office. Yeah, later. OK. Sorry, but it's my birthday today.

**Rob** Really?! Happy birthday! Maybe we could have dinner tonight?

**Daniel** Jennifer.

**Jenny** Oh, hi Daniel.

**Daniel** I'd like to take you out for dinner this evening.

**Jenny** This evening?

**Daniel** Yes, for a working dinner. We have a lot to talk about before you go back to New York. I know a very good restaurant.

**Jenny** Oh, erm... yes, of course.

**Daniel** Great. See you later.

**Jenny** Yes, sure. Sorry, Rob.

#### 4 55))

**Daniel** So, Jenny, I hear it's your birthday today.

**Jenny** Yes, that's right.

**Daniel** Well, Happy Birthday! How do you normally celebrate?

**Jenny** Oh, nothing special. Maybe I go out for dinner with friends or see a movie.

**Daniel** Well, we could go out somewhere, after dinner.

**Waiter** Would you like a dessert?

**Jenny** Not for me, thanks.

**Daniel** OK, no.

**Waiter** Coffee?

**Jenny** A decaf espresso.

**Daniel** The same for me, please.

**Waiter** Two decaffeinated espressos. Certainly, sir.

**Daniel** You know Jenny, you've got beautiful eyes.

**Jenny** I get them from my mother. Anyway, what are your plans for the July edition of the magazine?

**Daniel** The, er, July edition? I um...

**Jenny** I have to take this. Sorry.

**Daniel** No problem.

**Jenny** Hi, Barbara.

**Barbara** Jenny, just a quick call. We really like your idea about Rob Walker. He's a great writer.

**Jenny** So can I ask him?

**Barbara** Yes. Go ahead.

**Jenny** That's great.

**Barbara** Good luck. I hope he says yes.

**Jenny** Me too.

**Daniel** Good news?

**Jenny** Er, yeah. That was Barbara my boss from the New York office. She just gave me a little birthday present.

**Daniel** So, would you like to go somewhere else?

**Jenny** I'm sorry, Daniel. I'm a little tired.

**Daniel** Yes, of course. Waiter, could I have the bill, please?

#### 5 8))

**Presenter** On today's travel programme Alan Marks is going to tell us about CouchSurfing, a new way of travelling. Alan, what exactly is CouchSurfing?

**Alan** Well, CouchSurfing is an exciting and cheap way of travelling and seeing new places. It's a very simple idea. When you visit another city, you stay in somebody's flat or house. That person, the host, gives you a room and a bed, and if they don't have a bed, then you can sleep on their couch, or sofa.

#### 5 9))

**Presenter** Do you have to pay for the bed?

**Alan** No, you don't. It's completely free.

CouchSurfers usually take a small present for the host or maybe they can help with the housework or cook a meal. But you never pay any money.

**Presenter** How do you find these people?

**Alan** Well, there is a website called CouchSurfing.org. First, you go there

and create a profile. Then you search for the city you want to visit and you look for people there who are offering a bed. When you find somebody you send them an email and then you can agree the day or days that you want to stay. The website is free.

**Presenter** And do you have to offer a bed in your house?

**Alan** No, not if you don't want to. You can just be a guest or you can be a host and offer a room in your house, or you can do both things. It's up to you.

**Presenter** Is CouchSurfing safe?

**Alan** Yes, it is. You have a lot of information on the website about the person you are going to stay with. Every time a person stays with a host they write a report, either positive or negative and you can read all these reports. Also you can email the person before you go and ask any questions you like.

**Presenter** Does the host usually show you their city?

**Alan** Well, it depends on the person. Some hosts take their guests to see some of the sights, but others don't. It depends when you visit too. Some hosts take their guests out at weekends, but are too busy during the week. But hosts usually recommend things to do, so you often see things which tourists don't usually see.

**Presenter** And can I CouchSurf all over the world?

**Alan** Of course. In fact you can visit 230 countries and more than 70,000 cities.

#### 5 15))

##### Part 2

'Well I have a problem with my boyfriend. We argue all the time. I'm not sure that he loves me. I want to know if we're going to stay together.' 'Please choose five cards, but don't look at them.' Jane took five cards. The fortune-teller put them on the table face down. He turned over the first card. 'Ah, this is a good card. This means you're going to be very lucky.' 'But am I going to stay with my boyfriend?' Jane asked. 'Maybe,' said the fortune-teller. 'We need to look at the other cards first.'

#### 5 17))

##### Part 4

The fortune-teller turned over a card with two rings. 'Now I can see everything clearly. You are going to leave your boyfriend and go away with the other man, with Jim...to another country. And very soon you're going to get married.' 'Married? To Jim? But am I going to be happy with him?' 'You're going to be very happy together. I'm sure of it.' Jane looked at her watch. 'Oh no, look at the time. I'm going to be late for work.' She stood up, left a £50 note on the table, and ran out of the room.

#### 5 30))

One of the first things I noticed in Valencia is that people eat out a lot. They spend a lot of time in cafés and bars. You find people having



breakfast, or tea, in a bar, not just lunch and dinner. People who work go out to a bar to have coffee, they don't have it in their office. In restaurants one thing that really surprised me was that when people go out in big groups, the men all sit at one end of the table and the women at the other.

Another thing I notice, maybe because I'm a woman myself, is what Spanish women are like, or Valencian women maybe. Of course I'm a foreigner, but I find that the women here talk very fast and very loudly, much more than the men. Women dress very well, especially older women, and they always look immaculate!

Finally, there's a myth that the Spanish don't work hard, but I don't think it's true, it's just that they work different hours. People have a long lunch break, but they finish work very late.

### 5 36)))

**Interviewer** Today, most people spend a lot of time every day online, but do men and women use the internet in the same way?

**Expert** Research shows that in general they use the internet in different ways.

For example, men and women both use the internet to send emails, but men send more work emails, while women send more personal emails, to friends and family.

**Interviewer** What about online shopping?

**Expert** As you can imagine, women do more internet shopping than men. They often use online shops to buy things for the house, clothes, toys, and so on. Men, on the other hand prefer buying things on auction sites like eBay.

**Interviewer** What other sites are more popular with men?

**Expert** News sites like the BBC are more popular with men than with women. Men also like visiting sports sites where they can find out, for example, the football results. In general men use the internet a lot for fun. They download music and play games much more than women do.

**Interviewer** What do women do more than men?

**Expert** Well, women often use the internet to get information about health and medicine. And they are also more interested in websites which give them advice, for example websites which give advice about how to be good parents, or diet websites which help them to lose weight. They also use the internet for directions much more than men, they use websites like Google maps when they need to go somewhere new. And they use social networks like Facebook more than men do.

**Interviewer** Are there some things that both men and women do?

**Expert** Yes, they both use the internet to book tickets for trains and planes, and to book hotels. They also both use online banking, for example to pay bills or make transfers.

### 5 38)))

**Jenny** Rob!

**Rob** Jenny, hi. Sorry I'm a bit late.

**Jenny** No problem.

**Rob** Really?

**Jenny** Really!

**Rob** I got your message.

**Jenny** Would you like a coffee or something?

**Rob** No, I'm fine thanks. So what did you want to talk about? You think London is the best city in the world and you don't want to go home.

**Jenny** Not exactly. We'd like you to come to New York.

**Rob** Me? To New York?!

**Jenny** I talked to Barbara about you. You know, Barbara, my boss? She loves your articles, too. So, would you like to come over to New York and work for us? Just for a month. And write a column for *New York 24seven*. And maybe a daily blog?

**Rob** Wow, sounds great!? What could I call it? *An Englishman in New York*?

**Jenny** Why not! Are you interested?

**Rob** Yes, very. It's amazing! But I need to think about it.

**Jenny** Of course.

**Rob** When do I need to decide?

**Jenny** Before the end of the week?

**Rob** OK, great. Thank you.

**Jenny** And now, I really have to go.

### 5 42)))

**Jenny** Where is it? Where's my phone?!

**Rob** Are you looking for this?

**Jenny** Rob! I can't believe it! My phone! You're a hero, thank you so much.

**Rob** No problem. It gave me a chance to see you again. And I had more time to think about your offer.

**Jenny** And?

**Rob** I'd love to accept. I really want to come and work in New York.

**Jenny** That's great, Rob! I'm so happy.

**Rob** Me too. Oh, you had a call from Eddie. I didn't answer it. Is he going to meet you at the airport?

**Jenny** Eddie? No. He's at college in California.

**Rob** In California? Does he teach there?

**Jenny** Teach? No, he's a student.

**Rob** A student?

**Jenny** Well, he's only 19. Eddie's my brother.

**Announcement** Next departure flight 232 to New York is now ready for boarding.

**Jenny** I need to go.

**Rob** Well, have a good journey.

**Jenny** Thanks, Rob. Bye.

**Rob** Bye. And see you in New York!

### 5 49)))

1 Yes, I have. I don't usually see films more than once or twice, but I've probably seen *It's a Wonderful Life*, the old Frank Capra film, at least six or seven times because it's on TV every Christmas and it's usually on just after lunch on Christmas Day, which is when I'm full and a bit sleepy and I want to

sit on the sofa and watch a film. Actually, I think it's a great film.

- 2 Yes, *The Empire Strikes Back*, the second *Star Wars* film, well, the fifth episode in the series. I've seen it about twenty times probably. It's my favourite film of all time, and when I meet a girl I always watch it with her. It's a kind of test. If she doesn't like the film, then I think that our relationship isn't going to work.
- 3 Yes, I have. *Flashdance*. I've seen it, oh, more than a hundred times. I absolutely love it. I love the music, and the film just makes me feel good. Whenever I feel a bit depressed I think, right, I'm going to watch *Flashdance*. It always makes me feel better. I've bought the DVD three times because after you've played a DVD a lot it doesn't work properly.

### 5 51)))

**Jess** So, where are you going to take me for my birthday?

**Matt** I want to take you somewhere really nice. Have you been to *The Peking Duck* on 24th Street?

**Jess** On 24th Street. Yes, I have.

**Matt** Oh no! When did you go there?

**Jess** Last month. I went with some people from work.

**Matt** OK. Somewhere else. Have you ever eaten in *Appetito* on 2nd Avenue? They make fantastic pasta.

**Jess** I know. I've been there twice. But we could go there. I love Italian food.

**Matt** No, listen. Why don't we go back to *Luigi's*? We had a lovely meal last time. Do you remember? The Italian waiter sang for you. It was so romantic!

**Jess** No, I don't remember.

**Matt** You don't?

**Jess** No, I don't remember because it wasn't me. I've never been to *Luigi's*.

**Matt** Oh. My bad memory again.

**Jess** So, who did you go there with? With your ex-girlfriend?

**Matt** No, no, I went there with...my sister. Yes, with my sister.

**Jess** Your sister, huh? Let's forget it. I don't think I want to go out on my birthday.



# 1

## 1A present tense verb **be** (+), subject pronouns: *I, you, etc.*

**(+)** = positive form

(1 5))

Full form	Contraction
I am your teacher.	I'm your teacher.
You are in room 7.	You're in room 7.
He is Mike.	He's Mike.
She is Hannah.	She's Hannah.
It is a school.	It's a school.
We are students.	We're students.
You are in Class 2.	You're in Class 2.
They are teachers.	They're teachers.

- Always use a subject pronoun (*you, he, etc.*) with a verb, e.g. **It's a school.** NOT *Is a school.* **They're teachers.** NOT *Are teachers.*
- Always use capital *I*, e.g. **He's Mike and I'm Sally.** NOT *i'm Sally.* With other pronouns only use a capital letter when it's the first word in a sentence.
- *you* = singular and plural.
- Use *he* for a man, *she* for a woman, and *it* for a thing.
- Use *they* for people and things.

### Contractions

- In contractions ' = a missing letter, e.g. 'm = *am*.
- We use contractions in conversation and in informal writing, e.g. an email to a friend.

## 1B present tense verb **be** (-) and (?)

I'm not American. (1 23))  
 She isn't from London.  
 They aren't Spanish.  
 Are you Polish? Yes, I am.  
 Is she Russian? No, she isn't.

**(?)** = question form

Am I  
 Are you  
 Is he / she / it  
 Are we  
 Are you  
 Are they

German?  
 Russian?  
 Polish?

**(-)** = negative form

Full form	Contraction	
I am not	I'm not	
You are not	You aren't	
He / She / It is not	He / She / It isn't	Italian. Spanish. British.
We are not	We aren't	
You are not	You aren't	
They are not	They aren't	

- Put *not* after the verb *be* to make negatives.
- You can also contract *are not* and *is not* like this:  
*You're not Italian. She's not Spanish.*

**(✓)** = positive short answer

Yes,  
 I am.  
 you are.  
 he / she / it is.  
 we are.  
 you are.  
 they are.

**(✗)** = negative short answer

No,  
 I'm not.  
 you aren't.  
 he / she / it isn't.  
 we aren't.  
 you aren't.  
 they aren't.

- In questions, put *am, are, is, before I, you, he, etc.*  
**Are you German?** NOT *You are German?*  
**Where are you from?** NOT *Where you are from?*
- Don't use contractions in positive short answers.  
*Are you Russian? Yes, I am.* NOT *Yes, I'm.*

## 1C possessive adjectives: *my, your, etc.*

I'm Italian.	My family are from Rome.	(1 41))
You're in level 1.	This is your classroom.	
He's the director.	His name is Michael.	
She's your teacher.	Her name is Tina.	
It's a school.	Its name is Queen's School.	
We're an international school.	Our students are from many different countries.	
They're new students.	Their names are David and Emma.	



### it's or its?

Be careful with *it's* and *its*.  
*it's* = it is **It's a school.**  
*its* = possessive **Its name is Queen's School.**

- *his* = of a man, *her* = of a woman, *its* = of a thing.
- *their* = of plural people or things.
- Possessive adjectives don't change with plural nouns.  
**our students** NOT *ours students*



1A

a Complete with *am, is, or are*.

I am Mike.

- 1 We \_\_\_\_\_ from London.
- 2 He \_\_\_\_\_ early.
- 3 They \_\_\_\_\_ teachers.
- 4 Today \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ sorry.
- 6 It \_\_\_\_\_ a hotel.
- 7 You \_\_\_\_\_ in room 402.
- 8 She \_\_\_\_\_ a student.
- 9 My name \_\_\_\_\_ Carla.
- 10 I \_\_\_\_\_ in a taxi.

b Write the sentences with contractions.

He is late. He's late.

- 1 It is Friday. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 They are in school. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I am very well. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You are in my class. \_\_\_\_\_

c Write the sentences with a subject pronoun and a contraction.

Mike and Hannah are students. They're students.

- 1 John is in room 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Sam and I are early. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Julia is a teacher. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The school is in Madrid. \_\_\_\_\_

◀ p.5

1B

a Write the sentences in the negative.

She's Australian. She isn't Australian.

- 1 I'm British. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 They're Brazilian. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 It's in South America. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You're French. \_\_\_\_\_

b Make questions and short answers.

/ you English?  Are you English?  Yes, I am.

- 1 / I in room 10?  \_\_\_\_\_?  \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 / it Italian?  \_\_\_\_\_?  \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 / they students?  \_\_\_\_\_?  \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 / he from the USA?  \_\_\_\_\_?  \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 / you sure?  \_\_\_\_\_?  \_\_\_\_\_

c Complete the dialogue. Use contractions if possible.

A Hi. I'm Mark.

B Hello Mark. My name <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Maria.

A <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you Spanish, Maria?

B No. I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from Mexico.

A <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you from Mexico City?

B No. I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from Tijuana.

A <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Tijuana near Mexico City?

B No, it <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. It <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in the north.

A <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you a student?

B No. I <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.

◀ p.7

1C

a Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.

My name's Darly. I'm from Brazil.

- 1 The students are from Italy. \_\_\_\_\_ names are Susanna and Tito.
- 2 She's in my class. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Rebecca.
- 3 We're in class 2. \_\_\_\_\_ teacher is Richard.
- 4 London is famous for \_\_\_\_\_ parks.
- 5 How do you spell \_\_\_\_\_ surname, Anna?
- 6 This is my teacher. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Brad.
- 7 I'm from London. \_\_\_\_\_ address is 31, Old Kent Road.
- 8 Sit down and open \_\_\_\_\_ books, please.
- 9 Laura is in my class. \_\_\_\_\_ desk is near the window.
- 10 We're from Liverpool. \_\_\_\_\_ surname is Connor.

b Circle the correct word.

Mark and Simon are friends. They / Their are in class 2.

- 1 She's a new student. She / Her name's Ipek.
- 2 Is they / their teacher British?
- 3 My name's Soraya. I'm in you / your class.
- 4 Where are you / your friends from?
- 5 We're French. We / Our names are Marc and Jacques.
- 6 Is she / her German?
- 7 Peter is a teacher. He / His is from Ireland.
- 8 What's he / his name?
- 9 I'm Karen. I / My surname is White.
- 10 She / Her is from Barcelona.

◀ p.9



# 2

## 2A a / an, plurals; this / that / these / those

### a / an, plurals

It's a bag. (1 52))  
 It's **an** umbrella.  
 They're **books**.  
 They're **watches**.

### a / an (indefinite article)

It's	a	bag. pen.
	an	identity card. umbrella.

- Use *a / an* with singular nouns.
- Use *an* with a noun beginning with a vowel (*a, e, i, o, u*).
- Use *a* with nouns beginning *u* when *u = /ju:/*, e.g. *university*.

### regular plurals

Singular	Plural	Spelling
a book a key	books keys	add -s
a watch a box	watches boxes	add -es after <i>ch, sh, s, x</i>
a country a dictionary	countries dictionaries	consonant + <i>y &gt; ies</i>

- Add *-s* (or *-es* or *-ies*) to make plural nouns:  
*It's a pen. They're pens.*
- Don't use *a / an* with plural nouns:  
*They're keys. NOT They're a keys.*

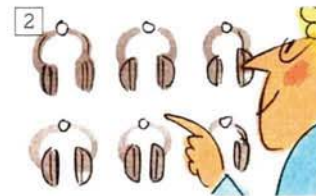
### irregular plurals

Singular	Plural
a man /mæn/	men /men/
a woman /'wʊmən/	women /'wɪmɪn/
a child /tʃaɪld/	children /'tʃɪldrən/
a person /'pɜːsn/	people /'piːpl/

### this / that / these / those



- 1 What's **this**? It's a ticket. (1 57))  
**These** watches are Japanese.  
 2 **That** car is Italian.  
 What are **those**? They're headphones.



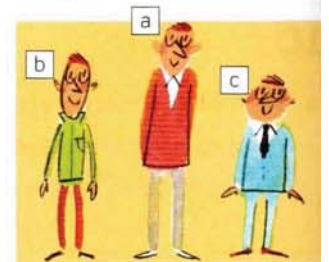
- 1 Use *this / these* for things near you (*here*).  
 2 Use *that / those* for things which aren't near you (*there*).  
 • *this / that* = singular; *these / those* = plural.  
 • *this, that, these, and those* can be adjectives (**this** watch) or pronouns (What's **this**?).

## 2B adjectives

- 1 The **White** House is in the USA. (1 63))  
 They're **blue** jeans.  
 2 He's **strong**.  
 It isn't **easy**.  
 Is it **American**?  
 3 It's a **very big** city.  
 She's **quite small**.

- 1 When we use an adjective with a noun, the adjective goes before the noun.  
*It's a big house. NOT It's a house big.*  
 Adjectives don't change before a plural noun: *They're blue jeans.*  
**NOT They're blues jeans.**

- 2 We can also use adjectives without a noun, after the verb *be*.  
 3 We often use *very* and *quite* before adjectives:  
 a *He's very tall.*  
 b *He's quite tall.*  
 c *He isn't very tall.*



## 2C imperatives, let's

- 1 **Open** the door. **Turn** right. (1 71))  
**Don't worry. Don't stop.**  
**Be quiet**, please. Please **sit down**.  
 2 **Let's go** home. **Let's wait**.

- 1 Use imperatives to give orders or instructions.  
 • [+] imperatives = verb (infinitive). [-] imperatives = *don't* + verb (infinitive).  
 • Add *please* to be polite: *Open the door, please.*  
 • We often use *be* + adjective in imperatives: *Be quiet, Be careful, etc.*  
 • Don't use a pronoun with imperatives: *Be quiet.*  
 2 Use *Let's* + verb (infinitive) to make suggestions.  
 Use *Let's not* + verb to make a negative suggestion: *Let's not wait.*



2A

a Complete with *a* or *an*. Write the plural.

singular	plural
<i>a</i> photo	<i>photos</i>
1 ___ city	_____
2 ___ email	_____
3 ___ person	_____
4 ___ box	_____
5 ___ woman	_____

b Write sentences with *It's* or *They're* (and *a* or *an* if necessary).

pen	<i>It's a pen.</i>
buses	<i>They're buses.</i>
1 children	_____
2 purse	_____
3 men	_____
4 umbrella	_____
5 sunglasses	_____

◀ p.12

c Complete the dialogues with *this*, *these*, *that*, or *those*.



Teacher What's <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Jenny?  
 Jenny It's an iPod.  
 Teacher And what are <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Jenny?  
 Jenny They're headphones.  
 Teacher Give them to me, please, Jenny.



Boy 1 Who's <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ man over there?  
 Boy 2 He's my father.  
 Boy 1 And are <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your dogs?  
 Boy 2 Yes, they are.  
 Boy 1 Wow!

◀ p.13

2B

a Underline the adjectives in these sentences.

- He's a rich man.
- They're Japanese tourists.
  - It's an international school.
  - That isn't the right answer.
  - We're good friends.
  - Hi, Anna. Nice to meet you.
  - Those animals are dangerous.
  - This is a big country.
  - My phone is very cheap.

b Put the words in the right order.

- is Chinese he? *Is he Chinese?*
- a day very it's hot
  - your Australian is teacher?
  - car fast isn't that very
  - a idea bad it's
  - a are student you good?
  - easy is English quite
  - strong my is brother very
  - watch expensive is this an

◀ p.14

2C

a Complete with a verb from the list. Use a ⊕ or a ⊖ imperative.

be go have open park read speak take turn on worry

- A It's hot. B Open the window.  
 A I'm very sorry B Don't worry. It isn't a problem.
- A I'm bored. B \_\_\_\_\_ the TV.
  - A *No entiendo*. B This is an English class. Please \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish.
  - A I'm tired. B It's late. \_\_\_\_\_ to bed.
  - A Is this book good? B No, it isn't. \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - A I'm hungry. B \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich.
  - A Look at those animals. B \_\_\_\_\_ careful. They're dangerous.
  - A It's raining. B \_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella.
  - A Where is our hotel? B It's over there. \_\_\_\_\_ here.

b Complete with *Let's* and a verb from the list.

close go open sit down stop turn off

It's hot. *Let's open* the window.

- Come on. \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's late. \_\_\_\_\_ the TV and go to bed.
- I'm tired. \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's very cold in here. \_\_\_\_\_ the window.
- There's a service station. \_\_\_\_\_ and have a coffee.

◀ p.17



# 3

## 3A present simple ⊕ and ⊖

British people **like** animals. (2 4))  
 They **live** in houses with gardens.  
 My husband **works** from 9.00 to 5.00.  
 Ann **has** three children.

⊕	⊖
I <b>work</b> .	I <b>don't work</b> .
You <b>work</b> .	You <b>don't work</b> .
He / She / It <b>works</b> .	He / She / It <b>doesn't work</b> .
We <b>work</b> .	We <b>don't work</b> .
You <b>work</b> .	You <b>don't work</b> .
They <b>work</b> .	They <b>don't work</b> .

- We use the present simple for things that are generally true or that habitually happen.

- Contractions: *don't = do not, doesn't = does not.*
- To make negatives use *don't / doesn't + verb (infinitive):*  
*He doesn't work. NOT He doesn't works.*

### spelling rules for he / she / it

I work / play / live.	He works / plays / lives.
I watch / finish / go / do.	She watches / finishes / goes / does.
I study.	She studies.

- The spelling rules for the *he / she / it* forms are the same as for the plurals (see **Grammar Bank 2A p.126**).

### Be careful with some he / she / it forms

I have	He has	NOT	He hases
I go	He goes	/gəʊz/	
I do	He does	/dʌz/	
I say	He says	/sez/	

## 3B present simple ?

Do you work in an office? No, I **don't**. (2 14))  
 Does she work outside? Yes, she **does**.

?	✓	✗
Do I work?	Yes, I <b>do</b> . you <b>do</b> . he /she /it <b>does</b> . we <b>do</b> . you <b>do</b> . they <b>do</b> .	No, I <b>don't</b> . you <b>don't</b> . he /she /it <b>doesn't</b> . we <b>don't</b> . you <b>don't</b> . they <b>don't</b> .
Do you work?		
Does he / she / it work?		
Do we work?		
Do they work?		

- Use *do* (or *does* with *he, she, it*) to make questions.

### do and does

*do = /duː/, does = /dʌz/*

*Do* and *does* can be:

- 1 the auxiliary verb to make present simple questions. *Do you speak English? Does she live here?*
- 2 a normal verb. *I do my homework in the evening. He does exercise every day.*

- The word order for present simple questions is **ASI = Auxiliary verb (do, does), Subject (I, you, he, she, etc.), Infinitive (work, live, etc.)**.

## 3C word order in questions

Question word / phrase	Auxiliary	Subject	Infinitive
	Do	you	live near here?
	Does	your mother	work?
What	do	you	do?
Where	does	he	live?
How many children	do	you	have?
What kind of music	does	she	like?
How	do	you	spell your surname?

- The word order for present simple questions with *do* and *does* is:  
**ASI (Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive)**, e.g. *Do you live here?*: **OR**  
**QUASI (Question, Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive)**, e.g. *Where do you live?*
- We often use question phrases beginning with *What*, e.g. *What colour...?*  
*What size...? What make...? What time...?*, etc.

### Word order in be questions

Remember the word order in questions with *be*. Put *be* before the subject. *Where are you from? What's your name? Is he Spanish?*



3A

a Change the sentences.

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| My mum drinks tea.                  | <i>I drink tea.</i>       |
| 1 I go to the cinema.               | She _____.                |
| 2 We live in a flat.                | He _____.                 |
| 3 She has two children.             | They _____.               |
| 4 My dad doesn't like cats.         | I _____.                  |
| 5 The shops close at 5.30.          | The supermarket _____.    |
| 6 We don't study French.            | My sister _____.          |
| 7 I do housework.                   | My husband _____.         |
| 8 I want a guitar.                  | My son _____.             |
| 9 I don't work on Saturdays.        | My friend _____.          |
| 10 Our lessons finish at 5 o'clock. | Our English lesson _____. |

b Complete the sentences with a  or  verb.

- eat have listen play read  
speak study wear work
- They *study* economics.
- 1  Pedro \_\_\_\_\_ in an office.
- 2  Eva \_\_\_\_\_ books in English.
- 3  You \_\_\_\_\_ Arabic very well.
- 4  I \_\_\_\_\_ games on my phone.
- 5  Paolo \_\_\_\_\_ glasses.
- 6  We \_\_\_\_\_ to music on the bus.
- 7  They \_\_\_\_\_ fast food.
- 8  Julia \_\_\_\_\_ two children.

◀ p.20

3B

a Complete the questions with *do* or *does*.

- Do* you work with a computer?
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ she have any qualifications?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ you speak a foreign language?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Jamie play the guitar?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ you like Italian food?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ you study another language?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ school children wear a uniform?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ your dad cook?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ people in your country work long hours?

b Make questions.

- A She works at night. B *Does she work* at the weekend?
- A I don't play the guitar. B *Do you play the* piano?
- 1 A He likes sport. B \_\_\_\_\_ tennis?
- 2 A She speaks foreign languages. B \_\_\_\_\_ German?
- 3 A I don't eat fast food. B \_\_\_\_\_ pizzas?
- 4 A They cook Italian food. B \_\_\_\_\_ lasagne?
- 5 A Teresa doesn't live in a flat. B \_\_\_\_\_ in a house?
- 6 A I want a new phone. B \_\_\_\_\_ an iPhone?
- 7 A My dad drives a Ferrari. B \_\_\_\_\_ fast?

◀ p.22

3C

a Order the words to make questions.

- you live where do ? *Where do you live?*
- 1 phones how many do you have?
- 2 interesting is job it an?
- 3 you drink how do coffee much ?
- 4 brother your where from is ?
- 5 you with work computers do?
- 6 read of what do kind you magazines?
- 7 do what does weekend he at the?
- 8 want you do drink another?
- 9 your where does sister live?
- 10 do how that you say English in?

b Complete the questions.

- What's *your name*? My name's Andrew.
- 1 How many children \_\_\_\_\_? Three, two girls and a boy.
- 2 What kind of films \_\_\_\_\_? He likes science-fiction films.
- 3 Where \_\_\_\_\_? We're from New York.
- 4 What \_\_\_\_\_ your father \_\_\_\_\_? He's a lawyer.
- 5 What kind of food \_\_\_\_\_? I like Japanese food.
- 6 Where \_\_\_\_\_? She works in an office.
- 7 Where \_\_\_\_\_? Our flat is near the market.
- 8 How many foreign languages \_\_\_\_\_? I speak French and Spanish.
- 9 When \_\_\_\_\_ to the gym? I go on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays.
- 10 How old \_\_\_\_\_? I'm 21.

◀ p.25



# 4

## 4A Whose...?, possessive 's

- 1 He's George Clooney's father. It's James's house. (2 31))
  - 2 They're my parents' friends.
  - 3 **Whose** is this bag? It's Maria's.
  - 4 The end of the film is fantastic. I live in the city centre.
- 1 We use 's with a person to talk about family and possessions:  
*George Clooney's mother* **NOT** *the mother of George Clooney*
  - 2 We use s' not 's with regular plural nouns, e.g.  
*They're my parents' friends.* **NOT** *They're my parent's friends.*
  - With irregular plural nouns, e.g. *children, men*, use 's:  
*the children's room, men's clothes.*

- 3 We use *Whose...?* to ask about possessions.  
We can ask *Whose is this bag?* **OR** *Whose bag is this?*  
You can answer *It's Maria's bag.* **OR** *It's Maria's.*
- 4 We don't usually use a thing + 's, e.g. *the end of the class* **NOT** *the class's end, the city centre* **NOT** *the city's centre.*



's

Be careful with 's. It can be two things:

*Maria's mother* ('s = of Maria)

*Maria's Spanish* ('s = is)

**Whose / Who's**

*Who's* = *Who is*, e.g. **Who's** that girl? *She's* my sister.

*Whose* = of who, e.g. **Whose** is this bag? It's Jack's.

*Whose* and *Who's* are pronounced the same.

## 4B prepositions: (at, in, on, to)

### Time

in	on	at	(2 42))
the morning	Monday	three o'clock	
the afternoon	Tuesday (morning)	midday / midnight	
the evening		lunchtime	
the summer		night	
		the weekend	
		Christmas	

- We use *in* for parts of the day and seasons.
- We use *on* for days.
- We use *at* for times of the day, *night, the weekend*, and festivals.



### Other uses of in and on

We also use **in** with months and years.  
e.g. **in** December, **in** 2015

We also use **on** with dates.  
e.g. **on** 1 January

(See **Grammar Bank 7A** p.136)

### Movement and place

- 1 He goes **to** work at 8.00. (2 43))
- 2 He has lunch **at** work.  
He works **in** an office.

- 1 We use *to* for movement or direction: *She goes to the gym.*  
**NOT** *She goes at the gym.*  
We don't use *to* before *home*: *go home* **NOT** *go to home*
- 2 We use *at* and *in* for position.
  - We use *at* + *work, home, school, university.*
  - We use *in* + other places: *a flat, an office, a room, etc.*
  - We can use *in* or *at* with some public places: *a restaurant, the cinema, etc.*  
*On Saturdays he usually has lunch in / at a restaurant.*

## 4C adverbs and expressions of frequency

- 1 I **always** have toast for breakfast. (2 49))  
Do you **usually** go to work by bus?  
She doesn't **often** go to the cinema.  
They're **sometimes** late.  
She **hardly ever** watches TV.  
He is **never** stressed.

- 2 I have English classes **twice a week**.  
She doesn't work **every day**.

- 1 We use adverbs of frequency to say how often you do something.
  - Adverbs of frequency go **before** all main verbs (except *be*).  
**after** *be*.
  - Use a [+ ] verb with *never* and *hardly ever*. *He never smokes.*  
**NOT** *He doesn't never smoke.*
  - In negative sentences the adverb of frequency goes between *don't / doesn't* and the verb.
- 2 Expressions of frequency usually go at the end of a sentence or verb phrase.



4A

a Circle the correct form.

Monica Cruz is Penelope Cruz's sister / sister's Penelope Cruz.

- 1 It's my mother's birthday / my birthday's mother.
- 2 That's her house's parents / her parents' house.
- 3 I'm tired when I go home at the end of the day / the day's end.
- 4 Those are friends' my sister / my sister's friends.
- 5 That's Anne's bag / Annes' bag.
- 6 Those are the students' desks / the student's desks.

b Look at the pictures. Answer the questions with a short sentence.

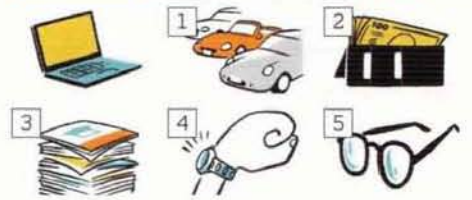
- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Whose is the laptop? <u>It's Bill's.</u> | 3 Whose are the magazines? _____ |
| 1 Whose are the cars? _____              | 4 Whose is the watch? _____      |
| 2 Whose is the wallet? _____             | 5 Whose are the glasses? _____   |



c Complete with Whose or Who's.

Whose car is this? Who's the man with dark hair?

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 _____ book is this?          | 4 _____ Kevin's girlfriend?    |
| 2 _____ keys are these?        | 5 _____ bag is this?           |
| 3 _____ your favourite singer? | 6 _____ their English teacher? |



◀ p.28

4B

a Complete with in, on, or at.

on Saturday

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ the evening
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 22nd September
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the summer
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 7.30
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ night
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ Monday mornings
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ January

b Complete with to, at, in or - .

We go to school by bus. They get - home late.

- 1 Sorry, John's not here. He's - work.
- 2 It's a lovely day. Let's go to the beach.
- 3 Sally's boyfriend works at an office.
- 4 My brother studies maths at the University of Manchester.
- 5 I go to the gym on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
- 6 What time do you go to home?
- 7 We live in a flat.
- 8 It's Monday. The children are at school.
- 9 My father's a doctor. He works at a hospital.
- 10 Jack isn't at home. He's on holiday.

◀ p.31

4C

a Put the adverb or expression of frequency in the right place.

They drive - they don't have a car. **never**

*They never drive - they don't have a car.*

- 1 Do you wear glasses? **usually** \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I'm bored. **hardly ever** \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 She does housework. **sometimes** \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We go to the cinema. **once a week** \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Why are you late? **always** \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I walk to work. **every day** \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 My girlfriend is stressed. **never** \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Does it rain in the winter? **often** \_\_\_\_\_

b Order the words to make sentences.

always she at six up gets  
*She always gets up at six.*

- 1 for late never I am class
- 2 eat ever fast hardly we food
- 3 what work you usually time do finish ?
- 4 parents radio often the my listen don't
- 5 always brother lunchtime is my hungry at
- 6 don't homework always our we do
- 7 you work every day to do drive ?
- 8 hardly teacher angry is our ever

◀ p.32



# 5

## 5A can / can't

- 1 I **can** sing, but I **can't** dance. (2 58))
- 2 I **can** come on Tuesday, but I **can't** come on Wednesday.
- 3 You **can** park here. You **can't** park there.
- 4 **Can** you help me? **Can** I open the window?

• can + infinitive has different meanings:

- 1 I **can** = I know how to.  
I **can't** = I don't know how to.
- 2 I **can** = It's possible for me.  
I **can't** = It's impossible for me.
- 3 You **can** = It's OK / It's permitted.  
You **can't** = It's not OK / It's not permitted.
- 4 **Can** you ...? = Please do it.  
**Can** I ...? = Is it OK if I do it?

+			-		
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	<b>can</b>	swim. come. help.	I / You / He / She / It / We / They	<b>can't</b>	swim. come. help.

?			✓			✗		
<b>Can</b>	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	swim? come? help?	Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	<b>can.</b>	No,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	<b>can't.</b>

- can and can't are the same for all persons (I, you, he, etc.). **NOT** He *can's*.
- Contraction: can't = cannot.
- Don't use to after can.  
I can swim. **NOT** I can to swim.

## 5B present continuous: be + verb + -ing

They're having a party in Flat 4. (3 4))  
Oh no! The baby's crying.  
It's raining.  
A What are you doing?  
B I'm waiting for my brother.

- We use the present continuous for things that are happening now / at the moment.
- We also use the present continuous with longer periods of time, e.g. today, this week.

I'm working at home **this week** because my daughter's not very well.

+		-	
I'm	You're	I'm not	You aren't
He / She / It 's	We're	He / She / It isn't	We aren't
They're		They aren't	
<b>having a party.</b>			

?		✓		✗	
Am I	Are you	Yes,	I am. you are. he / she / it is. we are. they are.	No,	I'm not. you aren't. he / she / it isn't. we aren't. they aren't.
Is he / she / it	Are we				
Are they	<b>having a party?</b>				

### spelling rules for the -ing form

infinitive	verb + -ing	spelling
cook	cooking	add -ing
study	studying	
dance	dancing	e + -ing
shop	shopping	one vowel + one consonant = double consonant + -ing

## 5C present simple or present continuous?

present simple	present continuous (3 12))
My sister <b>works</b> in a bank.	Today she's <b>working</b> at home.
What <b>do</b> you usually <b>wear</b> to work?	What <b>are</b> you <b>wearing</b> now?
It <b>rains</b> a lot here in the spring.	Look! It's <b>raining</b> .

- We use the present simple to say what we usually do, or things that are normally true.
- We often use the present simple with adverbs and expressions of frequency, e.g. always, often, once a week, etc.
- We use the present continuous to say what is happening now.

- We often use the present continuous with *at the moment, today, this week*.

**What do you do? or What are you doing?**  
**A** What **do** you **do**? (= What's your job?)  
**B** I'm a teacher.  
**A** What **are** you **doing**? (= now, at the moment)  
**B** I'm waiting for a friend.



5A

- a Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of *can* or *can't*.
- I know how to play the piano. *I can play the piano.*
- It's possible for her to meet me after work.  
She \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Please open the door.  
\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_, please?
  - My boyfriend doesn't know how to ski.  
My boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Is it OK if I use your car?  
\_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_?
  - It isn't possible for us to come to your party.  
We \_\_\_\_\_.

- b Complete the sentences with *can* or *can't* and the verbs.

- I'm sorry. *I can't remember* your name. (remember)
- She \_\_\_\_\_ French, but not Spanish. (speak)
  - \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ me? These bags are very heavy. (help)
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ you tonight. I'm very busy. (see)
  - \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ the window? It's cold in here. (close)
  - \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your address, please? (repeat)
  - It says 'No parking'. We \_\_\_\_\_ here. (stop)
  - Andy doesn't want to go to the beach because he \_\_\_\_\_. (swim)
  - \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ your phone? I want to call my dad. (use)

◀ p.36

5B

- a Write a question and answer.



What's she doing? *She's crying.*

- \_\_\_\_\_?
- \_\_\_\_\_?
- \_\_\_\_\_?
- \_\_\_\_\_?
- \_\_\_\_\_?

- b Put the verbs in brackets in the present continuous.

- A (*On the telephone*) Hi, Frank. It's Tina.  
B Hello, Tina. It's good to hear from you. Where are you?  
A I'm here in Bristol. I'm on holiday so *I'm visiting* (visit) my parents. I<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) with them all this week. They're retired. Right now they<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in the garden and I<sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in the sun. And you, Frank? What<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ these days? (do)  
B I<sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (look) for a job.  
A Good luck! What about your parents. How are they?  
B Fine. My mum<sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) to drive! She<sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not enjoy) it much because she's very nervous. At the moment she<sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (make) the dinner and my dad<sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (help) her.  
A It's great to speak to you, Frank. Can we meet?  
B Yes. Let's have dinner tonight.

◀ p.39

5C

- a Circle the correct form.

- A What *do you cook* / *are you cooking*? I'm really hungry.  
B Spaghetti. We can eat in ten minutes.
- A Hello. Is Martin at home?  
B No, *he plays* / *he's playing* football with his friends.
  - A *Do your parents live* / *Are your parents living* near here?  
B Yes. They *have* / *are having* a flat in the same building as me.
  - A How often *do you go* / *are you going* to the hairdresser's?  
B About once a month. When *I think* / *I'm thinking* my hair's very long.
  - A Don't make a noise! Your father *sleeps* / *is sleeping*!  
B Is he OK? He *doesn't usually sleep* / *isn't usually sleeping* in the afternoon.

- b Put the verbs in brackets in the present simple or continuous.

- Look. It's *raining*. (rain)
- A Hi, Sarah! What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ here? (do)  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ for a friend. (wait)
  - A Let's have lunch. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ hamburgers? (like)  
B No, sorry. I'm a vegetarian. I \_\_\_\_\_ meat. (not eat)
  - A Listen! The neighbours \_\_\_\_\_ a party again. (have)  
B They \_\_\_\_\_ a party every weekend! (have)
  - A What \_\_\_\_\_ your boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_? (do)  
B He's a teacher. He \_\_\_\_\_ at the local school. (work)
  - A Hi, Lisa. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_? (go)  
B To the gym. I \_\_\_\_\_ to the gym every evening. (go)

◀ p.41



# 6

## 6A object pronouns: *me, you, him, etc.*

subject pronoun	object pronoun	
I	me	Can you help <b>me</b> ?
you	you	I know <b>you</b> .
he	him	She isn't in love with <b>him</b> .
she	her	He phones <b>her</b> every day.
it	it	I don't like <b>it</b> .
we	us	Wait for <b>us</b> !
they	them	Call <b>them</b> this evening.

- Pronouns take the place of nouns.
- We use **subject** pronouns when the noun is the subject of a verb (i.e. the person who does the action): **John** is a doctor. **He** lives in London.
- We use **object** pronouns when the noun is the object of a verb (i.e. the person who receives the action): Anna meets **John**. She invites **him** to a concert.
- Object pronouns go after the verb:  
*I love you.* NOT *I you love.*
- We also use object pronouns after prepositions (*with, to, from, etc.*):  
*Listen to me!* I'm in love with **her**. NOT *I'm in love with she.*



He loves her but she doesn't love him.

## 6B like (+ verb + -ing)

- 😊😊 I love shopping. (3 34))
- 😊 I like going to the cinema.
- 😐 I don't mind getting up early.
- 😞 I don't like doing housework.
- 😞😞 I hate driving at night.

- We use verb + -ing after *like, love, don't mind, and hate.*

spelling rules for the -ing form		
infinitive	verb + -ing	spelling
cook	cooking	add -ing
study	studying	
dance	dancing	e + -ing
shop	shopping	one vowel + one consonant = double consonant + -ing

## 6C be or do?

be

- Hi. I'm Jim. (3 36))  
She **isn't** very friendly.  
**Are** you German?
- I can't talk. I'm driving.  
They **aren't** working today.  
Is it raining?

do / does

- Do you speak English? (3 37))  
Where **do** they live?  
They **don't** have children.  
**Does** your sister have a job?  
What **does** your father do?  
Alan **doesn't** like jazz.

**do as a main verb**  
Remember, we also use *do* as a main verb.  
*I'm doing my homework.*  
*Does he do the housework?*

- We use *be* as a main verb.
- We also use *be* to form the present continuous. *Be* here is an auxiliary verb.

- We use *do / does* and *don't / doesn't* to make questions and negatives in the present simple.
- Remember **ASI** and **QUASI** (See Grammar Bank 3C p.128).



6A

a Change the highlighted words to object pronouns.

I call my mother once a week.

I call her once a week.

- 1 I can't find my wallet.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 She speaks to her father in German.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He meets his friends after work.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Can you help my friend and me?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Ivan is in love with his girlfriend.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 My son doesn't like cats.  
\_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the sentences with a subject pronoun (*I, he, etc.*) or object pronoun (*me, him, etc.*).

John is American. He lives in California, with his parents. He argues with them a lot.

- 1 Susan has a big flat. \_\_\_\_\_ likes \_\_\_\_\_ a lot. We often visit \_\_\_\_\_ on Sundays because she invites \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch.
- 2 I am very happy with my neighbours. \_\_\_\_\_ often help \_\_\_\_\_ with my children. They often take \_\_\_\_\_ to school when I'm working.
- 3 Mark loves Ruth but she doesn't love \_\_\_\_\_. He calls \_\_\_\_\_ every day but \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't want to speak to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 My brother has two dogs. \_\_\_\_\_ takes \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk twice a day. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ very much because \_\_\_\_\_ bark at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 We often take my grandfather some magazines, but \_\_\_\_\_ never reads \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ watches TV all day and never turns \_\_\_\_\_ off.

◀ p.44

6B

a Write the *-ing* form of the verbs in the chart.

come cook dance eat get have  
run sleep stop study swim write

work > working	
live > living	writing
shop > shopping	

b Write sentences about Bob with *love, not like, like, not mind, or hate* and a verb.

- 😊😊 in an office a computer
- 😊😊 the newspaper housework
- 😊😞 lunch at work home late
- 😞😞 tennis to the cinema
- 😞😞 TV music



He loves working in an office.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 9 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

◀ p.47

6C

a Put the phrases in the correct column.

hungry like heavy metal tired  
waiting for a friend stressed  
have a car speak Russian  
listening to me know those people

Are you...?	Do you...?
hungry	

b Complete the dialogues with *do/does* or *am/is/are*.

A Do you speak German? B Yes, but I don't speak it very well.

- 1 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Gemma going? B She \_\_\_\_\_ going to the gym.
- 2 A \_\_\_\_\_ you live in a house? B Yes, but it \_\_\_\_\_ have a garden.
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_ Matt like shopping? B He \_\_\_\_\_ mind it.
- 4 A Why \_\_\_\_\_ you crying? B Because I \_\_\_\_\_ feeling sad.
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ your boyfriend cook? B Yes. He \_\_\_\_\_ making dinner now.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ you busy? B Yes. We \_\_\_\_\_ doing our homework.
- 7 A How old \_\_\_\_\_ your father? B He's 66, but he \_\_\_\_\_ want to retire.
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ you watching TV? B No. I \_\_\_\_\_ playing a video game.

◀ p.48



# 7

## 7A past simple of *be*: *was / were*

King Edward VIII's wife **was** American.  
She **wasn't** in class yesterday. **Was** she ill?  
The Beatles **were** famous in the 1960s.  
Where **were** you last night? You **weren't** at home.

3 44))

+			-		
I / He / She / It	<b>was</b> there.	I / He / She / It	<b>wasn't</b> there.		
You / We / They	<b>were</b> there.	You / We / They	<b>weren't</b> there.		
?			✓	✗	
<b>Was</b>	I / he / she / it	famous?	Yes, I <b>was</b> .	No, I <b>wasn't</b> .	
<b>Were</b>	you / we / they		Yes, you <b>were</b> .	No, you <b>weren't</b> .	

- We use *was / were* to talk about the past.
- We often use *was / were* with past time expressions, e.g. *yesterday, last night, in 1945*, etc.
- We use *was / were* with *born*: *I **was** born in Hungary*.

## 7B past simple: regular verbs

I **played** tennis this morning.  
We **watched** a good film on TV last night.  
My grandfather **lived** in Vienna when he was young.  
I **studied** German when I was at school.

3 53))

+			-					
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	<b>worked</b> yesterday.	I / You / He / She / It / We / They	<b>didn't work</b> yesterday.					
?			✓	✗				
Did	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	<b>work</b> yesterday?	Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	<b>did</b> .	No,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	<b>didn't</b> .

- We use the past simple for finished actions in the past.

### spelling rules for regular verbs

infinitive	past	spelling
watch	watched	add -ed
play	played	
live	lived	add -d
stop	stopped	one vowel + one consonant = double consonant
study	studied	consonant + y > ied

- **Contraction:** *didn't = did not*.
- Regular verbs in the past **+** end in *-ed*, e.g. *worked, lived, played*.
- The past simple is the same for all persons (*I, you, she*, etc.).
- Use auxiliaries *did / didn't* + infinitive for past simple **?** and **-**. *Did* is the past of *do*.

## 7C past simple: irregular verbs

I **went** to Spain last month. (3 59))  
I **didn't go** to Madrid.  
Did you **go** to Barcelona?

infinitive	past +	past -
go	<b>went</b>	<b>didn't go</b>
have	<b>had</b>	<b>didn't have</b>
get	<b>got</b>	<b>didn't get</b>
teach	<b>taught</b>	<b>didn't teach</b>
hear	<b>heard</b>	<b>didn't hear</b>
feel	<b>felt</b>	<b>didn't feel</b>
leave	<b>left</b>	<b>didn't leave</b>
lose	<b>lost</b>	<b>didn't lose</b>
meet	<b>met</b>	<b>didn't meet</b>
see	<b>saw</b>	<b>didn't see</b>
wear	<b>wore</b>	<b>didn't wear</b>
speak	<b>spoke</b>	<b>didn't speak</b>
do	<b>did</b>	<b>didn't do</b>

- Use the irregular past form only in **+** sentences:  
*I **saw** a film last night.*
- Use the infinitive after *did / didn't*:  
***Did** you **see** a film last night? NOT ~~Did you saw...~~*  
***I didn't go** out last night. NOT ~~I didn't went...~~*
- Remember word order in questions = ASI (Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. *Did you go out last night?* or QUASI (Question word, Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. *Where did you go?*
- There is a list of irregular verbs on page 165.



### could

Past of *can* = *could*.

**-** = *couldn't* NOT *didn't can*

**?** = *Could you...?* NOT *Did you can...?*



7A

a Complete the past simple sentences with *was/wasn't* or *were/weren't*.

present simple

My father's a painter.

- 1 Today is Monday.
- 2 Where are you now?
- 3 I'm in Italy.
- 4 Is it hot today?
- 5 The café isn't open now.
- 6 My neighbours aren't at home.
- 7 We're in Rome now.
- 8 They're tired.

past simple

My grandfather *was* a painter, too.

- 1 Yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.
- 2 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you yesterday?
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ in Germany last month.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ it hot yesterday?
- 5 It \_\_\_\_\_ open this morning.
- 6 They \_\_\_\_\_ at home yesterday.
- 7 We \_\_\_\_\_ in Venice yesterday.
- 8 They \_\_\_\_\_ tired last week.

b Complete the dialogues with *was, wasn't, were, or weren't*.

A *Were* you and Charlie at the concert last night?

B Yes, we <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

A <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it good?

B No, it <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. The singer <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ terrible.

A <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets expensive?

B Yes, they <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

A Where <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your mother born?

B She <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ born in Argentina in 1955.

A <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ her parents Argentinian?

B No, they <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Her father <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ German and her mother <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from Italy.

◀ p.52

7B

a Rewrite the sentences in the past simple with *yesterday*.

Present

I watch TV.

Past

*I watched TV yesterday.*

- 1 We study English. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you listen to the news? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He doesn't cook dinner. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Does she play sport? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 They work late. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I use the internet at work. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 She chats to her friends. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 My brother doesn't dance. \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the sentences with a verb in the past simple.

not call cry dance finish not listen play

*We finished* work late yesterday.

1 I \_\_\_\_\_ my mother on her birthday.

2 The film was very sad. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?

3 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ video games all day yesterday.

4 I \_\_\_\_\_ to the news this morning because I was late.

5 \_\_\_\_\_ Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ with Martin at the party?

◀ p.54

7C

a Complete the text with the verbs in brackets in the past simple.

Last weekend, I *went* (go) to London with some friends. We <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) at the train station at 7.30 a.m. Our train <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) at 7.45 a.m. In the morning, we <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some souvenirs. Then, we <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) lunch in an Italian restaurant. In the evening, we <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a Shakespeare play at the Globe Theatre. We <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home very late that night. We all <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) very tired but very happy.

b Complete the questions in the past simple.

*Did you go out* last night? Yes, I did.

- 1 What \_\_\_\_\_? I wore jeans.
- 2 Where \_\_\_\_\_ your friends? We met in a café.
- 3 What time \_\_\_\_\_? We got home late.
- 4 How \_\_\_\_\_ home? We went home by taxi.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ a good time? Yes, we had a great time.

c Correct the information using the word in brackets.

They got home at midnight. (11 p.m.)

*They didn't get home at midnight. They got home at 11.*

1 She wore a red dress. (blue)

2 I left work early. (late)

3 We went by train. (bus)

4 He lost his mobile phone. (wallet)

5 You had a sandwich. (salad)

◀ p.57



# 8

## 8A past simple: regular and irregular verbs

### 1 be

- I **was** born in Japan. They **were** late for class yesterday.
- She **wasn't** at home last night. You **weren't** very nice to her.
- Were** you ill yesterday? When **was** he born?

4 11))

### 2 regular verbs

- I really **liked** the present. She **wanted** to be a doctor.
- She **didn't enjoy** the concert. They **didn't arrive** until very late.
- Did** you **watch** the match last night? When **did** you **finish** the book?

### 3 irregular verbs

- I **went** to Paris last summer. She **slept** on the sofa.
- He **didn't come** home last night. They **didn't hear** the music.
- Did** you **speak** to your sister yesterday? Where **did** you **have** lunch?

- 1 The past of *be* is *was/were*. We add *not* to make negatives and invert the subject and verb to make questions.
- 2 Regular verbs add *-ed* or *-d* in the past simple , e.g. *like-liked, want-wanted*.
- 3 Irregular verbs change their form in the past simple , e.g. *go-went, see-saw*.
  - Regular and irregular verbs (except *can*) use:
    - *didn't* + infinitive to make negatives, e.g. *I didn't like it. She didn't see him.*
    - *did* + subject + infinitive to make questions, e.g. *Did you want to come? Where did she go?*



### can / could

The past of *can* is *could*. We add *not* to make negatives (*I couldn't find my glasses.*) and reverse the subject and verb to make questions (*Could you use your mobile on the mountain?*).

## 8B there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns

Singular	Plural
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>There's</b> a garage.	<b>There are</b> some pictures on the wall.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>There isn't</b> a swimming pool.	<b>There aren't</b> any plants in the room.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Is there</b> a bathroom downstairs?	<b>Are there</b> any neighbours with children?
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes, <b>there is</b> .	Yes, <b>there are</b> .
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No, <b>there isn't</b> .	No, <b>there aren't</b> .

4 16))

### there is / there are

- We use *there is* / *there are* to say that somebody or something exists. We use *there is* + a singular noun and *there are* + plural nouns.
- *There is* is often contracted to *There's*. *There are* is not usually contracted.
- When we talk about a list of things we use *there is* if the first word in the list is singular or *there are* if the first word in the list is plural:
  - In my bedroom **there's a** bed, two chairs, and a desk.*
  - In the living room **there are** two armchairs and a sofa.*

### a / an, some and any

- We often use *there is* / *there are* with *a* / *an*, *some*, and *any*.
- Use *some* and *any* with plural nouns. *Some* = not an exact number.
- Use *some* in  sentences and *any* in  and .



### There is or It is?

Be careful. *There is* and *It is* are different.

**There's** a key on the table. **It's** the key to the kitchen.

## 8C there was / there were

Singular	Plural
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>There was</b> an old TV.	<b>There were</b> only three guests.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>There wasn't</b> a remote control.	<b>There weren't</b> any more people.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Was there</b> a ghost?	<b>Were there</b> any windows?
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes, <b>there was</b> .	Yes, <b>there were</b> .
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No, <b>there wasn't</b> .	No, <b>there weren't</b> .

4 27))

- *there was* / *were* is the past of *there is* / *are*.



8A

- a Complete the dialogue using the past simple of the verbs in brackets.
- A Where were (be) you last night at 8.00?  
 B I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) at home, Inspector. With my wife. We <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) at home all evening.  
 A What <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (do)?  
 B We <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV and then we <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a light dinner. We <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) hungry. After that, we <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed.  
 A What time <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed?  
 B About 10 o'clock.  
 A <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) a noise during the night?  
 B No, I <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not hear) anything.

- b Complete the text with the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

Last night I was (be) asleep in my room when a strange noise <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (wake) me up. I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not want) to leave my room because I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) very scared. Then I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) the noise again, so I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) to go and investigate. When I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (turn on) the light in the kitchen, a bird <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) out of the window. I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (close) the window so that the bird <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not can) come in again and then I <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) back to bed.

◀ p.61

8B

- a Complete with  or  of *There's* or *There are*.

*There's* a dishwasher in the kitchen.

*Are there* any people in the room?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ any books on the shelf?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ a toilet downstairs?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ some stairs over there.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ a carpet on the floor.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ some pictures on the wall.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ a shower in the bathroom?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ some chairs in the garden.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ a lamp in the bedroom?
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ a motorbike in the garage.
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ any glasses in the cupboard?

- b Write , , or  sentences with *there is / are + a / an, some or any*.

trees / the garden *There are some trees in the garden.*

- 1  table / the kitchen \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2  fireplace / the living room \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3  plants / your flat \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4  people / the hall \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5  pictures / your bedroom \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6  TV / the kitchen \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7  computer / the study \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8  chairs / the dining room \_\_\_\_\_?
- 9  mirror / the bathroom \_\_\_\_\_?
- 10  car / the garage \_\_\_\_\_?

◀ p.63

8C

- a Complete the dialogue with the correct form of *there was* or *there were*.

A How many guests were there in the hotel?

B <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ four including me. <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a French tourist and <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ two businessmen.

A <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a restaurant?

B No, <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, but <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a bar.

A <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a minibar in your room?

B Yes, <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ but <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ any drinks in it.

A How many beds <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

B One. A double bed.

- b Complete the sentences with *there was / were / wasn't / weren't + a / an, or some / any*.

*There were some* ghosts in the haunted castle I stayed in.

- 1 My sister didn't have a shower because \_\_\_\_\_ spider in the bath.
- 2 We couldn't watch the news because \_\_\_\_\_ TV in our room.
- 3 I couldn't sleep on the plane because \_\_\_\_\_ noisy children behind me.
- 4 They couldn't play tennis because \_\_\_\_\_ tennis balls.
- 5 She didn't have a coffee because \_\_\_\_\_ cups.
- 6 He took a photo because \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful view.
- 7 They couldn't park near the restaurant because \_\_\_\_\_ car park.
- 8 I couldn't work in the hotel because \_\_\_\_\_ computer.

◀ p.65



# 9

## 9A countable / uncountable nouns



an apple    three apples    rice    meat

- There are two kinds of noun in English; countable (C) and uncountable (U).

C = things you can count, e.g. *apples*. C nouns can be singular (*an apple*) or plural (*apples*).

U = things you can't count.

*butter, meat* NOT *two-butters, three-meats*

U nouns are normally singular.

- Some nouns can be C or U but the meaning is different.



an ice cream (C)    some ice cream (U)

a / an, some / any

	countable	uncountable (4 30))
⊕ We need	an apple. some apples.	some butter.
⊖ We don't need	a tomato. any tomatoes.	any rice.
⊙ Do we need	an orange? any oranges?	any sugar?

- We use *a / an* with singular C nouns; *a / an* = one.
- We use *some* ⊕ with plural C nouns and with U nouns; *some* = not an exact number or quantity.
- We use *any* in ⊖ and ⊙ with plural C nouns and with U nouns.

### some in ⊙

We use *some* in ⊙ to ask for and offer things.

Can I have **some** apples, please?

Would you like **some** coffee?

## 9B quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc.

uncountable (singular)	short answers	full answers (4 37))
How much sugar do you eat?	A lot. Quite a lot. A little. Not much. None.	I eat a lot of sugar. I eat quite a lot of sugar. I eat a little sugar. I don't eat much sugar. I don't eat any sugar.
countable (plural)		
How many sweets do you eat?	A lot. Quite a lot. A few. Not many. None.	I eat a lot of sweets. I eat quite a lot of sweets. I eat a few sweets. I don't eat many sweets. I don't eat any sweets.

- We use *How much...?* with uncountable (U) nouns and *How many...?* with plural countable (C) nouns.
- We use:
  - a lot (of)* with C and U nouns for a **big quantity**.
  - quite a lot (of)* for a **medium quantity**.
  - a little / not...much* with U nouns for a **small quantity**.
  - a few / not...many* with C plural nouns for a **small quantity**.
  - not...any (none in short answers)* for **zero quantity**.

### a lot of and much / many

- In ⊕ sentences we usually use *a lot of*.
- In ⊖ sentences and ⊙, we usually use *much* and *many*:  
*I don't drink much water. Do you drink much coffee?*
- It is also possible to use *a lot of* in ⊖ and ⊙: *Do you drink a lot of coffee? I don't eat a lot of vegetables.*

## 9C comparative adjectives

Is your sister **older than** you? (4 47))

Buckingham Palace is **bigger than** the White House.

Female mosquitoes are **more dangerous than** males.

My new job is **better than** my old one.

The traffic is always **worse** in the evening.

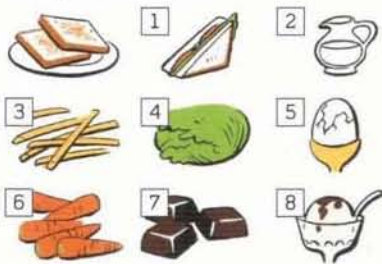
- Use comparative adjectives + *than* to compare two things, people, etc.

adjective	comparative	
old cheap	older cheaper	one-syllable adjectives: add -er
big hot	bigger hotter	adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant, add -er
dry healthy	drier healthier	one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + y > -ier
famous expensive	more famous more expensive	two- or more syllable adjectives: more + adjective
good bad far	better worse further	irregular



9A

a Write *a, an, or some* + a food / drink word.



*some bread*

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 _____ | 5 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 6 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 7 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 8 _____ |

b Complete the dialogue with *a, an, some, or any*.

- A What can we cook for your brother and his girlfriend?  
 B Let's make a lasagne.  
 A Good idea. Are there <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ onions?  
 B Yes. And there are <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes, too.  
 A Great!  
 B Oh no! There isn't <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ pasta!  
 A Oh. Wait a minute. I bought <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ fish yesterday. Are there <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes?  
 B Yes, there are.  
 A Good. So we can have fish and chips. Do we have <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ fruit?  
 B Yes. I think we have <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ oranges. Why?  
 A You can make <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ fruit salad for dessert. There's <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ apple and <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ bananas, too.  
 B OK. Let's start cooking.

◀ p.69

9B

a Complete with *How much / How many*.

*How much* sugar do you put in your tea?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ butter do you use?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ cans of cola did she drink?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ oil do I need?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ chocolates were in that box?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ rice do you want?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ coffee does he drink?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ bottles of water did you buy?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ tins of tuna do we have?
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice is there in that carton?
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ biscuits did you eat?

b Circle the correct word or phrase.

I don't put much many salt on my food.

- 1 We don't eat *a lot of / a lot* sweets.
- 2 A How much chocolate do you eat? B *A little / A few*.
- 3 My friends don't drink *much / many* coffee.
- 4 A How much fruit do you buy? B *Quite a lot / Quite a lot of*.
- 5 We eat *a lot of / much* fish. We love it!
- 6 A Do your children drink any milk? B No. *Not much / Not many*.
- 7 Donna ate her hamburger, but she didn't eat *much / many* chips.
- 8 A How many vegetables do you eat? B *Any / None*. I don't like them.
- 9 I have a cup of tea and *a few / a little* cereal for breakfast.
- 10 A Do you eat *much / many* meat?  
 B No, I don't eat *no / any* meat. I'm a vegetarian.

◀ p.70

9C

a Write the comparative form of these adjectives.

big *bigger*

- |               |       |
|---------------|-------|
| 1 high        | _____ |
| 2 dirty       | _____ |
| 3 dangerous   | _____ |
| 4 good        | _____ |
| 5 thin        | _____ |
| 6 slow        | _____ |
| 7 healthy     | _____ |
| 8 far         | _____ |
| 9 comfortable | _____ |
| 10 bad        | _____ |

b Complete with a comparative adjective + *than*.

My sister is *younger than* me. She's only 18. (young)

- 1 The market is \_\_\_\_\_ the supermarket for vegetables. (cheap)
- 2 Italian is \_\_\_\_\_ for Spanish students \_\_\_\_\_ it is for English students. (easy)
- 3 It rains a lot in the spring. April is \_\_\_\_\_ July (wet)
- 4 This restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ when it first opened. (busy)
- 5 Come in the summer. The weather is \_\_\_\_\_ in the spring. (good)
- 6 I love science. I find it \_\_\_\_\_ history. (interesting)
- 7 Milan is \_\_\_\_\_ from the sea \_\_\_\_\_ Rome. (far)
- 8 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ my brother. He's very tall. (short)
- 9 The situation is \_\_\_\_\_ it was last year. (bad)
- 10 Skiing is \_\_\_\_\_ I thought it was. (difficult)

◀ p.73



# 10

## 10A superlative adjectives

It's **the hottest** month of the year. (5 5))  
 It's **the most dangerous** road in the world.  
 She's **the best** student in the class.  
 Monday is **the worst** day of the week.

- Use *the* + superlative adjective to say which is the (*biggest*, etc.) in a group.
- After superlatives, we use *in* (not *of*) + places, e.g. *the world*, *the class*.

adjective	comparative	superlative	
cold high	colder higher	<b>the coldest</b> <b>the highest</b>	add -est
big hot	<b>bigger</b> <b>hotter</b>	<b>the biggest</b> <b>the hottest</b>	double consonant, add -est
dry sunny	drier sunnier	<b>the driest</b> <b>the sunniest</b>	> -iest
dangerous	<b>more</b> dangerous	<b>the most</b> dangerous	<i>the most</i> + adjective
good bad far	<b>better</b> <b>worse</b> <b>further</b>	<b>the best</b> <b>the worst</b> <b>the furthest</b>	irregular

## 10B *be going to* (plans)

I'm **going to** have a holiday next month. (5 11))  
 I'm **not going to** study English.  
 Are you **going to** have a holiday too?

	full form	contraction		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	I <b>am</b> You <b>are</b> He / She / It <b>is</b> We <b>are</b> They <b>are</b>	I'm You're He / She / It's We're They're	<b>going to</b>	<b>have</b> a holiday next month. <b>study</b> English tonight.
<input type="checkbox"/>	I <b>am not</b> You <b>are not</b> He / She / It <b>is not</b> We <b>are not</b> They <b>are not</b>	I'm <b>not</b> You <b>aren't</b> He / She / It <b>isn't</b> We <b>aren't</b> They <b>aren't</b>	<b>going to</b>	<b>have</b> a holiday next month. <b>study</b> English tonight.

?		
Am I Are you Is he / she / it Are we Are they	<b>going to</b>	<b>have</b> a holiday next month. <b>study</b> English tonight.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Yes, I <b>am</b> . you <b>are</b> . he / she / it <b>is</b> . we <b>are</b> . they <b>are</b> .	No, I'm <b>not</b> . you <b>aren't</b> . he / she / it <b>isn't</b> . we <b>aren't</b> . they <b>aren't</b> .

- We use *be going to* + verb (infinitive) to talk about future plans.
- We often use future time expressions with *going to*:  
*tomorrow*, *next week*, *next year*, etc.

## 10C *be going to* (predictions)

- We can use *be going to* + verb (infinitive) to make predictions (= to say what you think or can see is going to happen in the future).

I think it's **going to** rain. (5 19))  
 You're **going to** be very happy.  
 I'm sure they're **going to** win.





10A

a Write the opposite.

- the smallest      the biggest
- 1 the coldest      \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 the most expensive      \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 the best      \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 the most difficult      \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 the driest      \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 the shortest      \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 the nearest      \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 the cleanest      \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the sentences with a superlative. Use the adjectives in brackets.

The tigers are *the most dangerous* animals in the zoo. (dangerous)

- 1 Our house is \_\_\_\_\_ house in the street. (big)
- 2 For me, Saturday is \_\_\_\_\_ day of the week. (good)
- 3 My bedroom is \_\_\_\_\_ room in our house. (small)
- 4 July is \_\_\_\_\_ month in my country. (hot)
- 5 My neighbours upstairs are \_\_\_\_\_ people in the world. (noisy)
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ driver in my family is my dad. (bad)
- 7 Sophie is \_\_\_\_\_ student in our English class. (young)
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ building in my town is the castle. (beautiful)

◀ p.76

10B

a Complete the sentences with the correct form of *be going to* and the verb in brackets.

She doesn't have a car. *She's going to travel by train.* (travel)

- 1 We need a holiday. We \_\_\_\_\_ a hotel near the beach. (book)
- 2 Tomorrow is Saturday. I \_\_\_\_\_ in bed. (stay)
- 3 My sister wants to be a doctor. She \_\_\_\_\_ medicine. (study)
- 4 Laura and David are in love. They \_\_\_\_\_ married. (get)
- 5 Ian is busy. He \_\_\_\_\_ late tonight. (work)
- 6 Their house isn't very tidy. They \_\_\_\_\_ the housework this afternoon. (do)
- 7 It's raining. We \_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella. (take)
- 8 I have a problem at work. I \_\_\_\_\_ to my boss. (speak)

b Complete the sentences with *be going to* + a verb.

not buy   call   not come   eat  
go   not see   sleep   watch

I'm staying with a friend. *I'm going to sleep* on the couch.

- 1 I need to talk to my mum. I \_\_\_\_\_ her tonight.
- 2 There isn't any food. What \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 My friend is ill. She \_\_\_\_\_ to the party.
- 4 They don't have any money. They \_\_\_\_\_ any new clothes.
- 5 Germany are playing England. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the match?
- 6 Our friends are away. We \_\_\_\_\_ them this week.
- 7 The children are tired. They \_\_\_\_\_ to bed.

◀ p.78

10C

a Write predictions for the pictures.



A be   catch   make   play   send

B the bus   an email   a nice day   an omelette   tennis

*He's going to play tennis.*

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the predictions with *be going to* and a verb.

be   break   not finish   forget   have  
not like   not pass   tell   win

I'm a fortune teller. *I'm going to tell* you about your future.

- 1 You're driving very fast! I'm sure we \_\_\_\_\_ an accident!
- 2 She's a very bad student. She \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.
- 3 Be careful with that glass! You \_\_\_\_\_ it!
- 4 We have a lot of homework. I'm sure we \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 5 They're playing very well. I think they \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Look at the time. We \_\_\_\_\_ late.
- 7 Oh no, it's a horror film. I'm sure I \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 8 He didn't put her number in his phone. He \_\_\_\_\_ it.

◀ p.81



# 11

## 11A adverbs (manner and modifiers)

### adverbs of manner

They drive **dangerously**. (5 25))  
 He dresses **fashionably**.  
 She eats very **quickly**.  
 I work **hard**.  
 We speak English **well**.

- We use adverbs of manner to say how people do things.
- Adverbs usually go after the verb.  
*I speak English **very well**.*  
**NOT** *I speak very well English.*


adjective	adverb	
slow	slowly	+ -ly
quick	quickly	
bad	badly	
careful	carefully	
healthy	healthily	consonant + y
easy	easily	> -ily
possible	possibly	le > -ly
good	<b>well</b>	irregular
fast	<b>fast</b>	
hard	<b>hard</b>	

- Remember the difference between adjectives and adverbs:  
*I'm a **careful** driver.* (*careful* is an adjective. It describes the noun, *driver*.)  
*I drive **carefully**.* (*carefully* is an adverb. It describes the verb, *drive*.)

### modifying adverbs: very, quite, etc.

It isn't **very** expensive. (5 26))  
 People are **quite** formal.  
 She drives **incredibly** fast.  
 They speak **really** slowly.

- We use modifying adverbs with adjectives or other adverbs.
- They always go before the adjective or adverb.

 **words ending in -ly**  
 Not all words that end in -ly are adverbs, e.g. *friendly* = adjective.  
*He's a **friendly** person.*

## 11B verbs + to + infinitive: want to, need to, etc.

I **want to find** a new job. (5 31))  
 You **need to practise** every day.  
 When did you **learn to play** the guitar?  
**Would you like to be** famous?

- Many verbs are followed by a verb in the infinitive with *to*.
- These include: *want, need, learn, promise, decide, plan, and hope*.

### would like to

- *I would like to* = *I want to* (now or in the future).
- **Contractions:** 'd = *would*; wouldn't = *would not*.
- Use the infinitive with *to* after *would like*. *I would like to learn*. **NOT** *I would like learn*.
- Remember you can also use *Would you like...?* to offer:  
*Would you like a drink?*
- *would like* is the same for all persons.

 **would like and like**  
*I'd like to dance.* = I want to dance.  
*I like dancing.* = I enjoy it; I like it in general.

## 11C articles

### 1 a / an

A What's this? B It's a photo of my daughter. (5 37))  
 A What do they do? B Jim's a doctor. Sally's an engineer.  
 A How often do they have classes? B Three times a week.

### 2 the

Can you close **the window**, please?  
 Can you check their address on **the internet**?  
 It's **the best** restaurant I know.

### 3 a or the?

Let's have a pizza. **The pizzas** are very good here.

### 4 no article

**Men** are usually more interested in sport than **women**.  
 She's **my mother's cousin**. That's **Tom's chair**!  
 Jim goes to **school** by bus.

### 1 We use a / an

- to say what something is or what job people do.
- in expressions of frequency.

### 2 We use the

- when the speaker and hearer know the thing we are talking about: *Close **the window***. = the one that is open.
- when there is only one of something: *the internet, the sun, etc.*
- before superlative adjectives: *the biggest, the best, etc.*

### 3 We often use a the first time we mention a person or thing and then the the next time because it is now clear who or what we are talking about.

### 4 We don't usually use the

- when we talk about people or things in general:  
***Men** are more interested in sport than **women**.* (general)  
***The women** in this class work harder than **the men**.* (specific)
- before possessive 's. *She's my mother's cousin*. **NOT** *She's the my-mother's cousin*.
- with the following:  
**meals:** *breakfast, lunch, dinner, etc.*  
**places:** *work, school, university, bed, home, etc.*  
**by + transport:** *go by car, travel by train, etc.*



11A

a Adjective or adverb? Circle the correct form.

People drive quite *dangerous* / *dangerously*.

- 1 He wrote down the phone number *careful* / *carefully*.
- 2 My neighbour's children aren't very *polite* / *politely*.
- 3 My niece plays the piano *beautiful* / *beautifully*.
- 4 Fast food is incredibly *unhealthy* / *unhealthily*.
- 5 Old people often walk very *slow* / *slowly*.
- 6 I bought a *real* / *really* cheap bag in the sales.
- 7 My friend sings very *good* / *well*.
- 8 My sister speaks Spanish *perfect* / *perfectly*.
- 9 We wear *casual* / *casually* clothes to work.
- 10 The view from the top is *incredible* / *incredibly* beautiful.

b Complete with adverbs from these adjectives.

bad careful easy fast good  
hard healthy perfect quiet

The buses and trains in Malmö run *perfectly* when it snows.

- 1 Can you talk \_\_\_\_\_, please? I'm trying to sleep.
- 2 Don't drive \_\_\_\_\_ when it's raining.
- 3 I don't like the sea because I can't swim very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 She picked up the baby \_\_\_\_\_ and put him in the bath.
- 5 We're working \_\_\_\_\_ because we have an exam.
- 6 People who do sport usually eat very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 We played \_\_\_\_\_ in the semi-final and we lost 5-1.
- 8 She was the best athlete so she won the race \_\_\_\_\_.

◀ p.85

11B

a Complete the sentences with *to* + a verb from the list.

be buy call climb drive get married  
go leave pass see stay

Sam loves Africa. He wants *to climb* Mount Kilimanjaro.

- 1 I learned \_\_\_\_\_ a car when I was 17. I passed my test first time!
- 2 Our fridge is broken. We need \_\_\_\_\_ a new one.
- 3 I wouldn't like \_\_\_\_\_ famous. I'm happy as I am.
- 4 He promised \_\_\_\_\_ his girlfriend after work.
- 5 The weather was terrible. We decided \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
- 6 My friend would like \_\_\_\_\_ Radiohead live. She loves them.
- 7 They're planning \_\_\_\_\_. Their wedding is on 12<sup>th</sup> July.
- 8 I studied hard last week. I hope \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.
- 9 Do you like animals? Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ on a safari?
- 10 She's enjoying the party. She doesn't want \_\_\_\_\_.

b Circle the correct form.

I hate *fly* / *flying* so I usually travel by train.

- 1 Would you like *have* / *to have* dinner with me tonight?
- 2 My grandmother learned *to drive* / *driving* when she was 62.
- 3 I'd like *to travel* / *travelling* around Europe.
- 4 I like *relax* / *relaxing* at the weekend.
- 5 Do you want *to play* / *playing* football?
- 6 He's hoping *to have* / *having* more time when he retires.
- 7 Most people hate *to go* / *going* to the dentist.
- 8 I love *to read* / *reading* detective stories.
- 9 It's cold. You need *wear* / *to wear* a coat.
- 10 My mum doesn't like *to cook* / *cooking*.

◀ p.86

11C

a Circle the correct word or phrase.

How much time do you spend on *internet* / *the internet*?

- 1 My brother is *at university* / *the university* studying Maths.
- 2 I'd like *cup of tea* / *a cup of tea*, please.
- 3 We're going to visit my aunt *at weekend* / *at the weekend*.
- 4 We have English classes *twice a week* / *twice week*.
- 5 I love reading *novels* / *the novels*.
- 6 Yolanda is *best* / *the best* student in our class.
- 7 My mum's *lawyer* / *a lawyer*.
- 8 He's *the man* / *a man* that I told you about yesterday.
- 9 Can you open *a door* / *the door* for me, please?
- 10 He had *breakfast* / *the breakfast* late this morning.

b Complete with *the*, *a* / *an*, or *-*.

I'm going to buy *a* new laptop next week.

- 1 What time do you finish \_\_\_\_\_ work?
- 2 We usually go to the cinema once \_\_\_\_\_ month.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ children behaved very badly yesterday.
- 4 Lorena doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ dogs.
- 5 I want to be \_\_\_\_\_ engineer when I finish studying.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ sun came out so we went for a walk.
- 7 Can you pass \_\_\_\_\_ salt, please?
- 8 My mum chose \_\_\_\_\_ most expensive dessert.
- 9 Last year we went on holiday by \_\_\_\_\_ train.
- 10 This is Joanne. She's \_\_\_\_\_ very good friend.

◀ p.89



# 12

## 12A present perfect

- 1 A Have you seen his new film? (5 45))  
 B Yes, I've seen all his films.  
 She hasn't read any Harry Potter books.
- 2 Have you ever read a Russian novel?  
 Sarah's never worked in a big company.
- 3 Have you finished the exercise?  
 Your parents have arrived. They're in the living room.

- We use the present perfect when we talk or ask about things that have happened in the past, but when we don't say when.
- We often use the present perfect with *ever* (= at any time in your life) and *never* (= at no time in your life).
- We also use the present perfect to talk about something that has recently happened.

	full form of have	contraction	past participle of main verb
+	I have You have He / She / It has We have They have	I've You've He / She / It's We've They've	seen that film.
-	I have not You have not He / She / It has not We have not They have not	I haven't You haven't He / She / It hasn't We haven't They haven't	

?	Have Has	I / you / we / they he / she / it	seen that film?
---	-------------	--------------------------------------	-----------------

✓	Yes,	I / you / we / they he / she / it	have. has.
---	------	--------------------------------------	---------------

✗	No,	I / you / we / they he / she / it	haven't. hasn't.
---	-----	--------------------------------------	---------------------

- To make the present perfect use *have / has* + the past participle of the verb.
- 's = *has* in present perfect.
- Past participles of regular verbs are the same as the past simple.

infinitive	past simple	past participle
like	liked	liked
want	wanted	wanted

- Past participles of irregular verbs are sometimes the same as the past simple, e.g. *read*, but sometimes different, e.g. *seen*.

infinitive	past simple	past participle
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
see	saw	seen

(There is a list of irregular past participles on p.165)

## 12B present perfect or past simple?

- A Have you been to Luigi's? B Yes, I have. (5 52))  
 A When did you go there? B I went last weekend.  
 A Who did you go with? B I went with some people from work.

I've been to New York twice. I went to visit my sister – she's married to an American.

- We often use the **present perfect** to ask about or tell somebody about a past action for the first time. We don't ask / say when the action happened: *Have you been to Luigi's?* *I've been to New York twice.*
- We then use the **past simple** to ask / talk about specific past details: *When did you go there?* *I went to visit my sister.*
- We use the past simple **NOT** the present perfect with *when* and past time expressions, e.g. *yesterday*, *last week*: *When did you see it?* **NOT** *When have you seen it?* *I saw it last week.* **NOT** *I've seen it last week.*

### been or gone?

I've been to Italy. (5 53))  
 My sister's gone to Italy to study Italian.

- been to* and *gone to* have different meanings. *been* is the past participle of *be*, and *gone* is the past participle of *go*.
- In the present perfect we use *been to* (**NOT** *gone to* or *been in*) to say that somebody has visited a place. *I've been to the USA three times. Have you been to the new Italian restaurant in George Street?*
- We use *gone to* when somebody goes to a place and is still there: *My parents have gone to the USA for their holidays. They don't come back until Saturday.*
- Compare: *Nick has been to Paris* = He visited Paris and came back at some time in the past.  
*Nick has gone to Paris* = He went to Paris and he is in Paris now.



12A

a Write the sentences with contractions.

I have seen the film. *I've seen the film.*

- 1 She has not read the book.
- 2 You have not washed the dishes.
- 3 We have done the housework.
- 4 He has been ill.
- 5 They have not eaten Japanese food before.

b Write , , and  sentences in the present perfect.

I / meet a famous actor.  
*I've met a famous actor.*

- 1  I / forget your name
- 2  my boyfriend / wear his new shirt
- 3  you / speak to your boss
- 4  they / do their homework
- 5  your brother / work in New York
- 6  the train / leave the station
- 7  we / take any photos
- 8  the children / eat all the biscuits
- 9  my girlfriend / call me today
- 10  Janet / leave her book at home

c Write a sentence in the present perfect for each picture. Use the verbs in the box.

break buy fall go read win



*They've won the cup.*

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ his leg.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ off his motorbike.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ a new car.

◀ p.92

12B

a Circle the correct form.

Have you ever eaten / Did you ever eat in 'Appetito'?

- 1 I haven't bought / didn't buy any new clothes recently.
- 2 My boyfriend has given / gave me a ring for my last birthday.
- 3 They've spent / spent a lot of money yesterday.
- 4 Have you ever won / Did you ever win a competition?
- 5 My friends have had / had a party last weekend.

b Circle the correct form.

Let's go to the 'Peking Duck'. I've never been / gone there.

- 1 The secretary isn't here. She's gone / been to the bank.
- 2 I've never gone / been to the USA.
- 3 My neighbours aren't at home. They've gone / been on holiday.
- 4 Have you ever gone / been abroad?
- 5 We have lots of food. We've gone / been to the supermarket.

c Put the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or past simple.

A *Have you ever travelled* abroad? (travel)

B Yes, I *went* to Portugal last year. (go)

A <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you ever \_\_\_\_\_ any countries outside Europe? (visit)

B Yes, I have. I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to Morocco a few years ago. (go)

A Who <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ with? (go)

B My husband. It was a work trip and his company <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for everything. (pay)

A How wonderful! How <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ there? (get)

B We <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. (fly)

A Where <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_? (stay)

B We <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a suite in a five-star hotel. It was beautiful! (have)

A <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the company \_\_\_\_\_ you on any other trips recently? (take)

B No. My husband <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ working there a year later, so that was our only trip. (stop)

A What a pity!

◀ p.94



# Days and numbers

## 1 DAYS OF THE WEEK

a Complete the days of the week with the letters.

W Fr S S Th T M

Monday /'mʌndeɪ/      \_iday /'fraɪdeɪ/  
 \_uesday /'tʃʊzdeɪ/      \_aturday /'sætədeɪ/  
 \_ednesday /'wenzdeɪ/      \_unday /'sʌndeɪ/  
 \_ursday /'θɜːzdeɪ/

b 1 10)) Listen and check.

c Cover the days of the week. Say them in order.



### Useful phrases

the weekend (= Saturday and Sunday)

a weekday (= Monday-Friday)

What day is it today? It's Friday.

Have a good weekend. You too.

See you on Monday.

### Capital letters

Days of the week begin with a capital letter.

Tuesday NOT *tuesday*

## 2 NUMBERS 0-20

a Match the words with the numbers.

twelve twenty eleven three  
 eighteen five fifteen seven

- |                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 0 zero /'ziərəʊ/      | 11 _____ /ɪ'levn/               |
| 1 one /wʌn/           | 12 _____ /'twelv/               |
| 2 two /tuː/           | 13 <u>thirteen</u> /θɜː'tiːn/   |
| 3 <u>three</u> /θriː/ | 14 <u>fourteen</u> /fɔː'tiːn/   |
| 4 four /fɔː(r)/       | 15 _____ /fɪf'tiːn/             |
| 5 _____ /faɪv/        | 16 <u>sixteen</u> /sɪks'tiːn/   |
| 6 six /sɪks/          | 17 <u>seventeen</u> /sevn'tiːn/ |
| 7 _____ /'sevn/       | 18 _____ /eɪ'tiːn/              |
| 8 eight /eɪt/         | 19 <u>nineteen</u> /naɪn'tiːn/  |
| 9 nine /naɪn/         | 20 _____ /'twenti/              |
| 10 ten /ten/          |                                 |

b 1 11)) Listen and check.

c Cover the words. Say the numbers.



### Phone numbers

We say the digits separately.

794 1938 = seven nine four, one nine three eight

44 = four four OR double four      0 = zero OR oh

← p.5

## 3 NUMBERS 21-100

a Write the numbers.

- |          |                                   |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| 21 _____ | <u>twenty-one</u> /'twenti 'wʌn/  |
| _____    | <u>thirty</u> /θɜːti/             |
| _____    | <u>thirty-five</u> /θɜːti 'faɪv/  |
| _____    | <u>forty</u> /fɔːti/              |
| _____    | <u>forty-three</u> /fɔːti 'θriː/  |
| _____    | <u>fifty</u> /fɪfti/              |
| _____    | <u>fifty-nine</u> /fɪfti 'naɪn/   |
| _____    | <u>sixty</u> /sɪksti/             |
| _____    | <u>sixty-seven</u> /sɪksti 'sevn/ |
| _____    | <u>seventy</u> /sevnti/           |
| _____    | <u>seventy-two</u> /sevnti 'tuː/  |
| _____    | <u>eighty</u> /eɪti/              |
| _____    | <u>eighty-eight</u> /eɪti 'eɪt/   |
| _____    | <u>ninety</u> /naɪnti/            |
| _____    | <u>ninety-four</u> /naɪnti 'fɔː/  |
| _____    | a / one <u>hundred</u> /'hʌndrəd/ |

b 1 26)) Listen and repeat.



### Pronunciation

13 and 30, 14 and 40, etc. are similar, but the stress is different, e.g. thirteen, thirty, fourteen, forty, etc.

-een is a long sound /iː/, but -y is a short sound /ɪ/.

← p.7

## 4 HIGH NUMBERS

a Write the missing words or numbers.

- |                 |                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 105 _____       | a / one hundred and five            |
| _____           | two hundred                         |
| 350 _____       | three hundred and _____             |
| 875 _____       | eight hundred _____ seventy-five    |
| 1,000 _____     | a / one thousand /θəʊznd/           |
| _____           | one thousand five hundred           |
| 2,012 _____     | two thousand and _____              |
| 5,420 _____     | five thousand four _____ and twenty |
| _____           | twenty-five thousand                |
| 100,000 _____   | a / one hundred _____               |
| 1,000,000 _____ | a / one million /'mɪljən/           |
| 2,300,000 _____ | two million _____ hundred thousand  |

b 4 43)) Listen and check.

← p.72



### 1 CONTINENTS

a Match the words and continents.

Continent	Adjective
Africa /'æfrɪkə/	African /'æfrɪkən/
Asia /'eɪʒə/	Asian /'eɪʒn/
Australia /ə'streɪliə/	Australian /ə'streɪliən/
Europe /'juərəp/	European /'juərə'pi:ən/
1 North America	North American
South America	South American

b (1-15)) Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the map. Can you remember the continents and their adjectives?



### 2 COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

a (1-16)) Match the words and countries. Then listen and check.

Country /'kʌntri/	Nationality adjective
England /'ɪŋɡlənd/	-ish English /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/
Ireland /'aɪələnd/	Irish /'aɪrɪʃ/
Poland /'pəʊlənd/	Polish /'pəʊlɪʃ/
Scotland /'skɒtlənd/	Scottish /'skɒtɪʃ/
Spain /speɪn/	Spanish /'spæɪnɪʃ/
Turkey /'tɜ:kɪ/	Turkish /'tɜ:kɪʃ/
Germany /'dʒɜ:məni/	-an German /'dʒɜ:mən/
Mexico /'meksɪkəʊ/	Mexican /'meksɪkən/
1 the (United) States / the US(A)	American /ə'merɪkən/
Argentina /ə'dʒɜ:n'ti:nə/	-ian Argentinian /ə'dʒɜ:n'tɪniən/
Brazil /brə'zɪl/	Brazilian /brə'zɪliən/
Egypt /'i:dʒɪpt/	Egyptian /'i:dʒɪptɪn/
Hungary /'hʌŋɡəri/	Hungarian /'hʌŋ'ɡeəriən/
Italy /'ɪtəli/	Italian /'ɪtəliən/
Russia /'rʌʃə/	Russian /'rʌʃɪn/
China /'tʃaɪnə/	-ese Chinese /'tʃaɪ'nɪ:z/
Japan /dʒə'pæn/	Japanese /dʒə'pæ'nɪ:z/
the Czech Republic /tʃek rɪ'pʌblɪk/	Czech /tʃek/
France /frɑ:ns/	French /frentʃ/
Switzerland /'swɪtsələnd/	Swiss /swɪs/

b Cover the words and look at the maps. Can you remember the countries and nationalities?



**Capital letters**  
Use CAPITAL letters for countries, continents, nationalities, and languages, e.g. Japan NOT japan; Spanish NOT spanish.

24talk.ir



The teacher says

a Match the phrases and pictures 1–13.

- ☐ Open your books, please.
- ☐ Go to page 84.
- ☐ Do exercise a.
- ☐ Read the text.
- ☐ Look at the board.
- ☐ Close the door.
- 1 Work in pairs / groups.
- ☐ Answer the questions.
- ☐ Listen and repeat.
- ☐ Stand up.
- ☐ Sit down.
- ☐ Turn off your mobile.
- ☐ Please stop talking!

b 1 32)) Listen and check.

You say

a Match the phrases and pictures 14–22.

- ☐ Sorry, can you repeat that, please?
- 14 Sorry I'm late.
- ☐ I don't understand.
- ☐ Can I have a copy, please?
- ☐ How do you spell it?
- ☐ I don't know.
- ☐ Excuse me, what's \_\_\_\_\_ in English?
- ☐ Can you help me, please?
- ☐ What page is it?

b 1 33)) Listen and check.

c Cover the sentences and look at the pictures. Say the sentences.

### the

Look at **the** board.  
Answer **the** questions.

- Use **the** when we know which (board, questions, etc.).  
Look at **the** board. NOT *Look at a board.*
- Use **the** with singular and plural nouns (the board, the questions).

◀ p.8





# Things

## VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the words and pictures.

- a book /bʊk/
- 1 a coin /kɔɪn/
- a credit card /'kredɪt kɑ:d/
- a diary /'daɪəri/
- a dictionary /'dɪkʃənri/
- a file /faɪl/
- glasses /'glɑ:sɪz/
- headphones /'hedfəʊnz/
- an identity card /aɪ'dentəti kɑ:d/
- an iPod /'aɪpɒd/
- a key /ki:/
- a laptop /'læptɒp/
- a magazine /'mæɡə'zi:n/
- a mobile (phone) /'məʊbaɪl/
- a newspaper /'nju:zpeɪpə/
- a pen /pen/
- a pencil /'pensl/
- a photo /'fəʊtəʊ/
- a piece of paper /'pi:əs əv 'peɪpə/
- a purse /pɜ:s/
- scissors /'sɪzəz/
- a stamp /stæmp/
- sunglasses /'sʌŋɡlɑ:sɪz/
- a ticket /'tɪkɪt/
- a tissue /'tɪʃu:/
- an umbrella /ʌm'brelə/
- a wallet /'wɒlɪt/
- a watch /wɒtʃ/

b 151 Listen and check.

**Plural nouns**  
Some words for things are plural, e.g. glasses, headphones, trousers. Don't use *a* / *an* with plural nouns. NOT *a glasses*, *a headphones*.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer.

What is it? } It's a watch.

What are they? } They're glasses.

← p.12

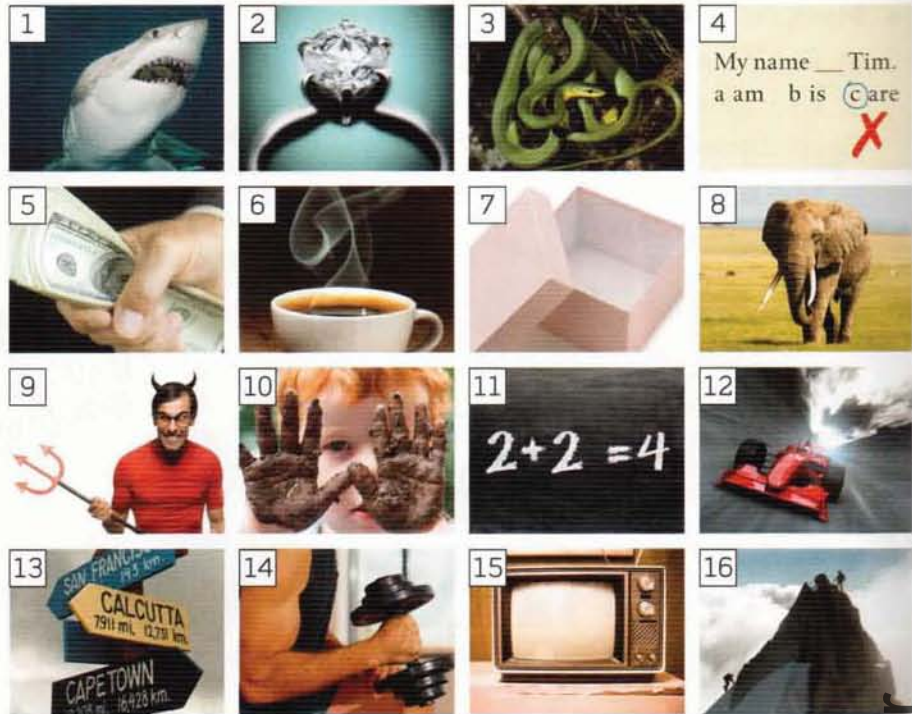




### 1 COMMON ADJECTIVES

a Match the words and pictures 1–16.

- bad /bæd/ \_\_\_\_\_
- big /bɪg/ \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 dangerous /'deɪndʒərəs/ safe \_\_\_\_\_
- dirty /'dɜːti/ \_\_\_\_\_
- easy /'iːzi/ \_\_\_\_\_
- empty /'empti/ \_\_\_\_\_
- expensive /ɪk'spensɪv/ \_\_\_\_\_
- far /fɑː/ \_\_\_\_\_
- fast /fɑːst/ \_\_\_\_\_
- high /haɪ/ \_\_\_\_\_
- hot /hɒt/ \_\_\_\_\_
- long /lɒŋ/ \_\_\_\_\_
- old /əʊld/ \_\_\_\_\_
- rich /rɪtʃ/ \_\_\_\_\_
- strong /strɒŋ/ \_\_\_\_\_
- wrong /rɒŋ/ \_\_\_\_\_



b (1.60) Listen and check.

c Match these adjectives with their opposites in a.

cheap /tʃi:p/	low /ləʊ/	short /ʃɔːt/
clean /kli:n/	near /nɪə/	slow /sləʊ/
cold /kəʊld/	new /njuː/	small /smɔːl/
difficult /'dɪfɪkəlt/	poor /pɔː/	weak /wi:k/
full /fʊl/	right /raɪt/	
good /gʊd/	safe /seɪf/	

d (1.61) Listen and check. Then test your partner. A say an adjective and B say the opposite.

**Modifiers: very / really, quite**  
We often use these words before adjectives.  
A Ferrari is **very / really fast**.  
It's **quite cold** today. (= It's cold, but not very cold)

e Look at the things in the list. Say two adjectives for each one. Use modifiers.

A Ferrari    Mount Everest    Bill Gates  
The Pyramids    Africa    Your town / city

A Ferrari - It's really fast and very expensive.

← p.14

### 2 APPEARANCE

a Match the opposite adjectives and the pictures.

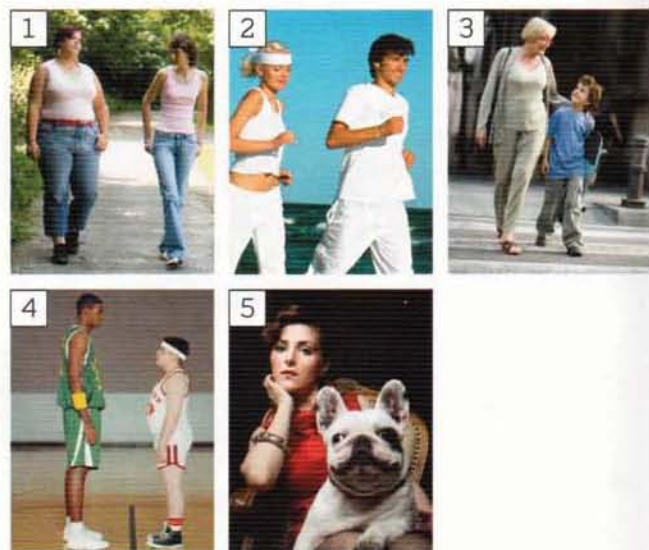
- blonde /blɒnd/    dark /dɑːk/    old /əʊld/    young /jʌŋ/
- beautiful /'bjʊ:tɪfl/    ugly /'ʌgli/    tall /tɔːl/    short /ʃɔːt/
- fat /fæt/    thin /θɪn/

b (1.67) Listen and check.

c Cover the adjectives and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

**Positive adjectives for appearance**  
*Beautiful, good-looking, pretty,* and *attractive* can all be used for women, but for men we only use *good-looking* or *attractive*.

← p.15





# Verb phrases

## VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the verbs and pictures.

- cook /kʊk/
- do /duː/
- drink /drɪŋk/
- eat /i:t/
- go /gəʊ/
- have /hæv/
- like /laɪk/
- listen /lɪsn/
- live /lɪv/
- play /pleɪ/
- read /ri:d/
- say /seɪ/
- speak /spi:k/
- study /ˈstʌdi/
- take /teɪk/
- want /wɒnt/
- watch /wɒtʃ/
- wear /weə/
- work /wɜ:k/



1 in a flat



2 in an office



3 children



4 economics



5 German



6 a new car



7 a newspaper



8 animals



9 to the cinema



10 TV



11 to music



12 tennis



13 an umbrella



14 homework / housework



15 the guitar



16 sorry



17 mineral water



18 fast food



19 dinner



20 exercise



21 glasses

b 2)) Listen and check.

**work**  
Work has two meanings.

- 1 She works in a museum.  
= it's her job
- 2 The phone doesn't work.  
= it's broken

**have or eat?**  
Have can be used with both food and drink, and is common with meals, e.g. *have a sandwich, have a coffee, have lunch.*  
Eat can only be used with food, e.g. *eat fast food.*

c Cover the verbs and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.20



a Match the words and pictures.

- an **administrator** /əd'mɪnɪstreɪtə/
- 1 an **architect** /'ɑ:kɪtekt/
- a **builder** /'bɪldə/
- a **chef** / a **cook** /ʃef/ /'kʊk/
- a **dentist** /'dentɪst/
- a **doctor** /'dɒktə/
- an **engineer** /endʒɪ'nɪə/
- a **factory worker** /'fæktəri wɜ:kə/
- a **flight attendant** /'flaɪt ətendənt/
- a **footballer** /'fʊtbɔ:lə/
- a **hairdresser** /'heədresə/
- a **journalist** /'dʒɜ:nəlist/
- a **lawyer** /'lɔ:jə/
- a (bank) **manager** /('bæŋk) mænɪdʒə/
- a **model** /'mɒdl/
- a **musician** /mju:'zɪʃn/
- a **nurse** /nɜ:s/
- a **pilot** /'paɪlət/
- a **policeman** / a **policewoman** /pə'li:smən/ /pə'li:swʊmən/
- a **receptionist** /rɪ'seɪpʃənɪst/
- a **shop assistant** /'ʃɒp əsɪstənt/
- a **soldier** /'səʊldɪə/
- a **teacher** /'ti:tʃə/
- a **vet** /vet/
- a **waiter** / a **waitress** /'weɪtə/ /'weɪtrəs/



### Pronunciation

In multisyllable words, final *-er* / *-or* is pronounced /ə/, e.g. *doctor*, *teacher*.  
Final *-ian* is pronounced /ɪn/, e.g. *musician*.

### a / an + jobs

We use *a* / *an* + job words.  
*She's a model.* NOT *She's model.*

b (28)) Listen and check.

c Cover the jobs. In pairs, say what the people do.

*She's a vet. He's an engineer.*

d (29)) Listen and repeat the sentences. What do you do?

What do you do?

- I'm a musician.  
I'm an engineer.
- I work for a French company.  
I work in a shop.
- I'm a student.  
I'm at university.  
I'm at school.
- I'm unemployed.  
I'm retired.

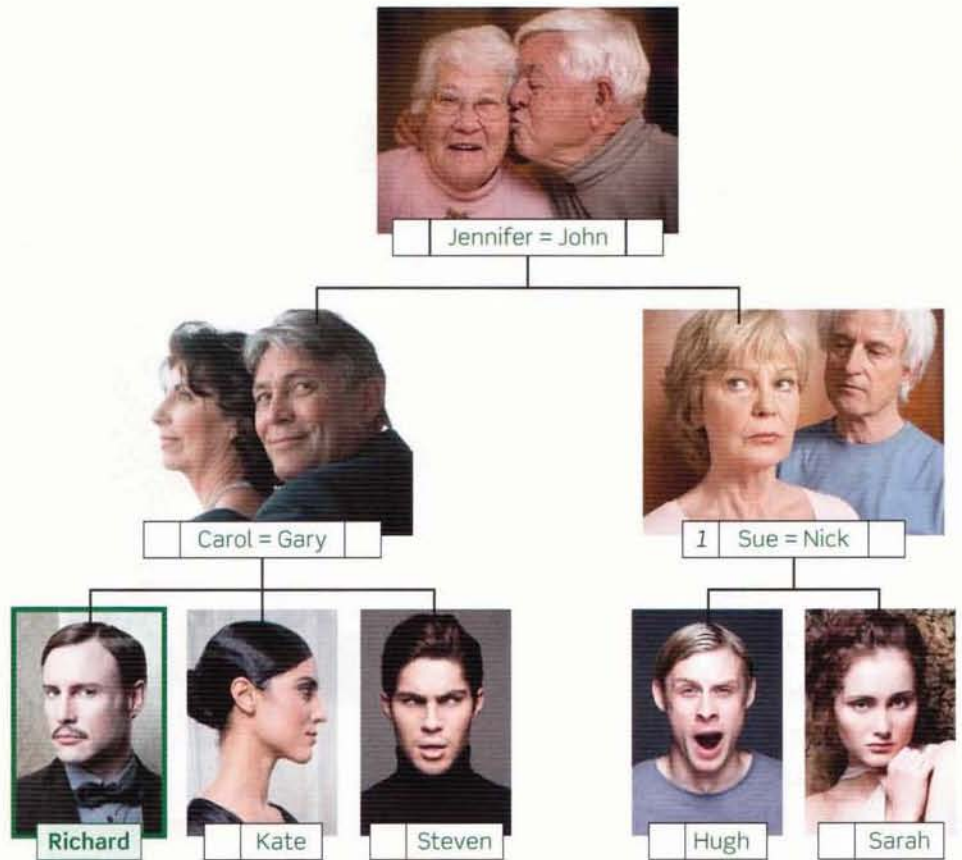
◀ p.22



# The family

a Look at the two family trees. Number the people in relation to Richard.

- 1 aunt /aʊnt/
- 2 brother /'brʌðə/
- 3 cousin /'kʌzɪn/
- 4 daughter /'dɔ:tə/
- 5 father /'fɑ:ðə/
- 6 grandfather /'grændfɑ:ðə/
- 7 grandmother /'grændmʌðə/
- 8 mother /'mʌðə/
- 9 nephew /'nefju:/
- 10 niece /ni:s/
- 11 sister /'sɪstə/
- 12 son /sʌn/
- 13 uncle /'ʌŋkl/
- 14 wife /waɪf/



b Complete 1–3 with *children*, *grandparents*, *parents*.

- 1 my father and my mother = my \_\_\_\_\_ /'peərənts/
- 2 my grandfather and my grandmother = my \_\_\_\_\_ /'grænpəərənts/
- 3 my son and my daughter = my \_\_\_\_\_ /'tʃɪldrən/

c (232)) Listen and check your answers to a and b.

**More family words**  
 My wife's mother = my **mother-in-law**; My sister's husband = my **brother-in-law**, etc.  
 My mother's second husband = my **stepfather**  
 My father's daughter from another wife = my **stepsister**



d Cover the words. In pairs, ask and answer.

Who's Jennifer? She's Richard's grandmother.  
 Who are Sue and Nick? They're Richard's aunt and uncle.



a Match the verbs and pictures.

### Suzy Stressed

- have a shower
- have a coffee
- do the housework
- start work at 8.30
- finish work at 6.30
- get dressed
- 1 wake up at 7.00
- have lunch at work
- go shopping
- go to bed late
- have pizza for dinner
- get home late
- go to work by bus
- watch TV and check emails

### Henry Healthy

- go to Italian classes
- do Italian homework
- 1 get up at 8.00
- have breakfast
- do exercise
- go home early
- walk to work
- relax
- take the dog for a walk
- sleep for eight hours
- make the dinner
- have a bath

b (2:37) Listen and check.

c In pairs, cover the phrases and look at the pictures. **A** describe Suzy's day, then **B** describe Henry's day. Then swap.

**have**  
Have has two meanings.

- 1 For family and possessions, e.g. *I have three children. He has a big house.*
- 2 For activities, e.g. *I have lunch at 1.30. She has a shower in the morning.*

### Suzy Stressed



### Henry Healthy





### 1 TELLING THE TIME

a Match the clocks and phrases.



- It's a quarter past six.
- It's six o'clock.
- 1 It's a quarter to seven.
- It's ten past six.
- It's five to seven.
- It's twenty-five to seven.
- It's half past six.
- It's three minutes past six.
- It's twenty past six.

b (2.24) Listen and check.

**Time**  
 You can ask for the time in two different ways:  
*What time is it?* OR *What's the time?*  
 For times which are not multiples of five we use *minutes*,  
 e.g. 6.03 = It's three minutes past six.

c Cover the phrases. Ask and answer with a partner.

What time is it? } } It's...

◀ p.26

### 2 EXPRESSIONS OF FREQUENCY

a Complete the expressions.

How often do you see your friends?

- |                           |                                      |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 every /evri/ <u>day</u> | M, T, W, Th, F, S, S                 |
| 2 every w_____            | week 1, week 2, week 3, etc.         |
| 3 every m_____            | January, February, March, etc.       |
| 4 every y_____            | 2001, 2002, 2003, etc.               |
| 5 once /wʌns/ a _____     | only on Mondays                      |
| 6 twice /twʌns/ a _____   | on Mondays and Wednesdays            |
| 7 three times a _____     | on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays  |
| 8 four times a _____      | in January, April, July, and October |

b (2.46) Listen and check.

c Cover the left-hand column. Test yourself.

### 3 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

a Match sentences 1–6 with a–f. What do the **highlighted** words mean?

- 1  I **always** /ˈɔːlweɪz/ get up at 7.00 during the week.
- 2  I **often** /ˈɒfn/ go to the cinema after work.
- 3  I **usually** /ˈjuːʒuəli/ finish work at 6.00.
- 4  I **sometimes** /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ meet a friend for lunch.
- 5  I **hardly ever** /ˈhɑːdli ɛvə/ go to the theatre.
- 6  I **never** /ˈnevə/ have coffee.

- a About seven or eight times a month.
- b I start work at 8.00 every day.
- c But on Fridays we stop at 3.00.
- d I don't like it.
- e Only once or twice a year.
- f About once or twice a month.

b (2.47) Listen and check.

**normally**  
*Normally* is the same as *usually*. I normally get up early = I usually get up early.

c Cover sentences 1–6 and look at a–f. Can you remember the sentences?

d (2.48) Listen and repeat the **highlighted** adverbs of frequency.

◀ p.32



# More verb phrases

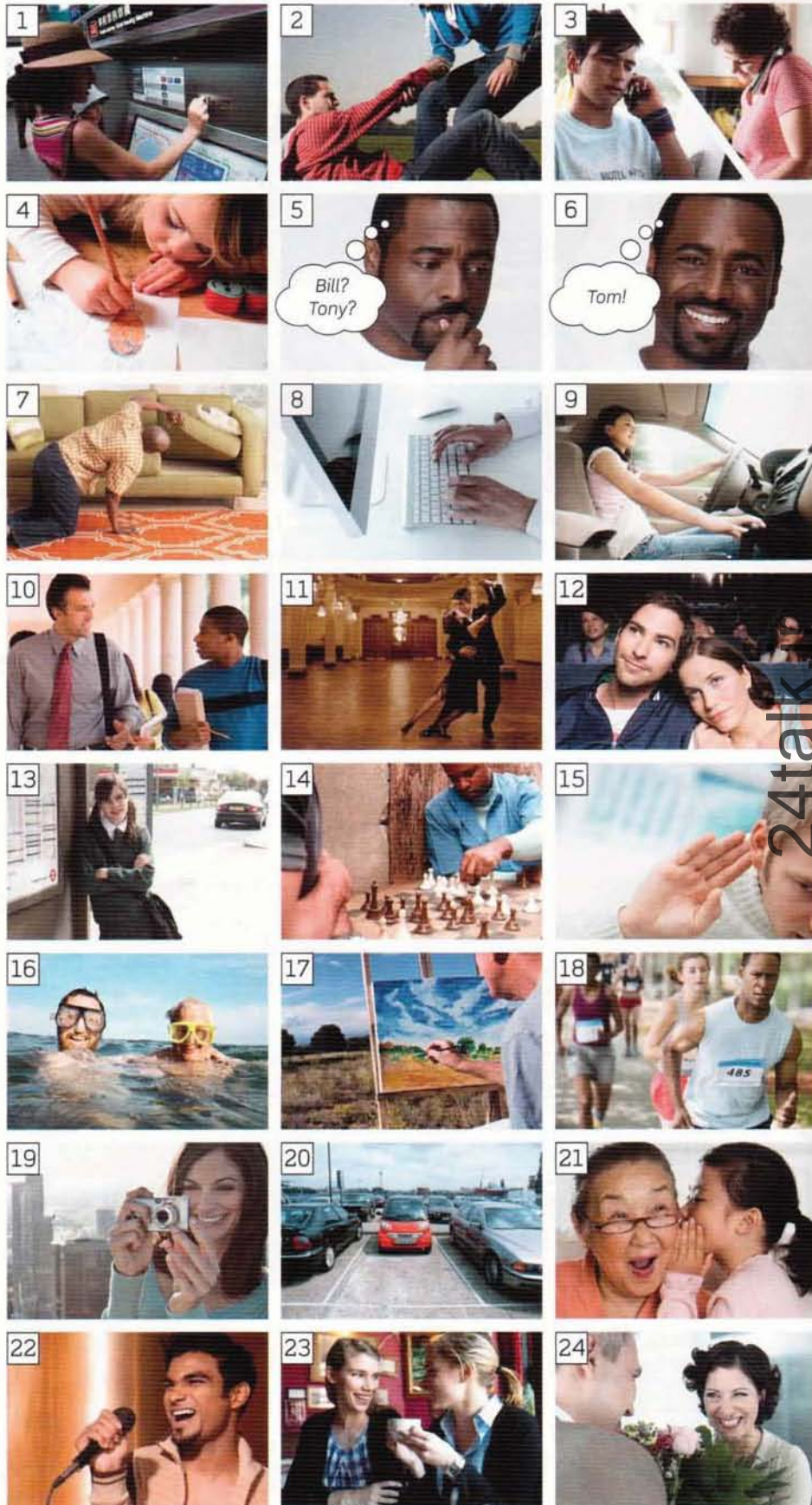
a Match the verbs and pictures.

- 1 buy (a ticket) /baɪ/
- call / phone (your mum) /kɔːl/ /fəʊn/
- dance (the tango) /dɑːns/
- draw (a picture) /drɔː/
- drive (a car) /draɪv/
- find (a parking space) /faɪnd/
- forget (somebody's name) /fə'get/
- give (somebody flowers) /gɪv/
- hear (a noise) /hɪə/
- help (somebody) /help/
- look for (your keys) /lʊk fɔː/
- meet (for a coffee) /miːt/
- paint (a picture) /peɪnt/
- play (chess) /pleɪ/
- remember (somebody's name) /rɪ'membə/
- run (a race) /rʌn/
- see (a film) /siː/
- sing (a song) /sɪŋ/
- swim (in the sea) /swɪm/
- take (photos) /teɪk/
- talk (to your teacher) /tɔːk/
- tell (somebody a secret) /tel/
- use (a computer) /juːz/
- wait for (a bus) /weɪt fɔː/

b (2/54)) Listen and check.

c Cover the verbs and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.36












# The weather and dates

## 1 THE WEATHER

a Complete the chart with words from the list.

cloudy /'klaʊdi/    hot /hɒt/    raining /'reɪnɪŋ/  
 cold /kəʊld/    snowing /'snəʊɪŋ/    windy /'wɪndi/  
 foggy /'fɒgi/    sunny /'sʌni/

What's the weather like?			
1 	It's <u>sunny</u> .	5 	It's _____.
2 	It's _____.	6 	It's _____.
3 	It's _____.	7 	It's _____.
4 	It's _____.	8 	It's _____.

b (3 8)) Listen and check.





**Other adjectives for temperature**  
 warm /wɔ:m/ = a nice temperature, not very hot (opposite = cool /ku:l/)

c Cover the chart and look at the pictures. Ask and answer with a partner.

What's the weather like?    It's sunny.

### The four seasons

d (3 9)) Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.

1 	2 
3 	4 

spring /sprɪŋ/    autumn /'ɔ:təm/  
 summer /'sʌmə/    winter /'wɪntə/

e What's the weather like today? What season is it where you are?

## 2 THE DATE

a Complete the months. Remember to use CAPITAL letters!

January    \_\_\_pril    \_\_\_uly    \_\_\_ctober  
 \_\_\_ebruary    \_\_\_ay    \_\_\_ugust    \_\_\_ovember  
 \_\_\_arch    \_\_\_une    \_\_\_eptember    \_\_\_ecember

b (3 29)) Listen and check.

c Complete the numbers and words.

1st    first /fɜ:st/  
 2nd    second /'sekənd/  
 3rd    third /θɜ:d/  
 4th    fourth /fɔ:θ/  
 5th    fifth /fɪfθ/  
 6th    \_\_\_\_\_ /sɪksθ/  
 7th    \_\_\_\_\_ /'sevntθ/  
 \_\_\_\_\_ eighth /eɪtθ/  
 \_\_\_\_\_ ninth /naɪnθ/  
 10th    \_\_\_\_\_ /tenθ/  
 11th    \_\_\_\_\_ /ɪ'levnθ/  
 \_\_\_\_\_ twelfth /twelfθ/  
 13th    \_\_\_\_\_ /θɜ:'ti:nθ/  
 14th    \_\_\_\_\_ /fɔ:'ti:nθ/  
 \_\_\_\_\_ twentieth /'twentiəθ/  
 21st    \_\_\_\_\_ /'twenti 'fɜ:st/  
 \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-second /'twenti 'sekənd/  
 23rd    \_\_\_\_\_ /'twenti 'θɜ:d/  
 \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-fourth /'twenti 'fɔ:θ/  
 30th    \_\_\_\_\_ /θɜ:'ti:əθ/  
 \_\_\_\_\_ thirty-first /θɜ:'ti 'fɜ:st/

d (3 30)) Listen and check.

**Writing and saying the date**  
 We write    We say  
 12th March    **the twelfth of March**  
 22/1    **the twenty-second of January**

**Prepositions with years, months, and dates**  
 Use *in* + years, e.g. *The Rio Olympics are in 2016.*  
 Use *in* + months, e.g. *My birthday's in February.*  
 Use *on* + dates, e.g. *The meeting is on Friday 5th September.*

**Saying years**  
 1807    eighteen oh seven  
 1936    nineteen thirty-six  
 2008    two thousand and eight (for years 2000–2010)  
 2011    two thousand and eleven OR twenty eleven

e What's the date today? What's the date tomorrow? What year is it?



# go, have, get

a Match the verbs and pictures.

- by bus / by car / by plane /bas/ /ka:/ /plein/
- 1 for a walk /wɜ:k/
- home (from school) /həʊm/
- out (on Friday night) /aʊt/
- shopping /'ʃɒpɪŋ/
- to a restaurant /'restrɒnt/
- to bed (late) /bed/
- to church / to mosque /tʃɜ:ʃ/ /mɒsq/
- to the beach /bi:tʃ/
- back (to work) /bæk/
- on holiday /'hɒlədeɪ/

- a car / a bike /kɑ:/ /baɪk/
- long hair /lɒŋ 'heə/
- breakfast / lunch / dinner /'brekfəst/ /lʌntʃ/ /'dɪnə/
- a drink /drɪŋk/
- a good time /gʊd taɪm/
- a sandwich /'sænwɪdʒ/
- a shower / a bath / a swim /'ʃaʊə/ /bɑ:θ/ /swɪm/

- a newspaper (= buy) /'nju:zpeɪpə/
- a taxi / a bus / a train (= take) /'tæksi/ /bʌs/ /treɪn/
- an email / a letter (= receive) /'i:meɪl/ /'letə/
- dressed /drest/
- home (= arrive) /həʊm/
- to the airport (= arrive) /'eəpɔ:t/
- up (early) /ʌp/

b (3 61)) Listen and check.

c Cover the expressions and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

d Take turns to say three things you did yesterday and three you did last week with went, had, or got.

Yesterday I got up early. I had breakfast in a café. I went shopping...

◀ p.57





# The house

## 1 ROOMS

Match the words and pictures 1–10.

- a bathroom /'bɑ:θrʊm/
- a bedroom /'bedru:m/
- a dining room /'daɪnɪŋ ru:m/
- a garage /'gærɑ:ʒ/
- a garden /'gɑ:dən/
- a hall /hɔ:l/
- a kitchen /'kɪtʃɪn/
- a living room /'lɪvɪŋ ru:m/
- 1 a study /'stʌdi/
- a toilet /'tɔɪlət/

## 2 PARTS OF A ROOM

Match the words and pictures 11–15.

- a balcony /'bælkəni/
- the ceiling /'si:lɪŋ/
- the floor /flɔ:/
- the stairs /steəz/
- the wall /wɔ:l/

## 3 THINGS IN A ROOM

a Match the words and pictures 16–31.

- an armchair /'ɑ:mtʃeə/
- a bath /bɑ:θ/
- a bed /bed/
- a carpet /'kɑ:pɪt/
- a cooker /'kʊkə/
- a cupboard /'kʌbəd/
- a fireplace /'faɪəpleɪs/
- a fridge /'frɪdʒ/
- a lamp /læmp/
- a light /laɪt/
- a mirror /'mɪrə/
- a plant /plɑ:nt/
- a shelf (shelves) /ʃelf/
- a shower /'ʃəʊə/
- a sofa / a couch /'səʊfə/ /'kaʊtʃ/
- a washing machine /'wɒʃɪŋ məʃi:n/



b (4 12))) Listen and check 1–3.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.62

**Central heating and air conditioning**  
 Central heating is a system that makes a house warm, usually using radiators.  
 Air conditioning is a system that makes a house cool.



# Prepositions: place and movement

## 1 PLACE

a Match the words and pictures.

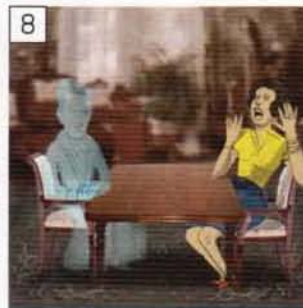
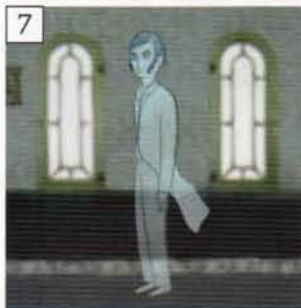
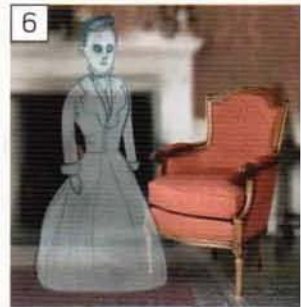
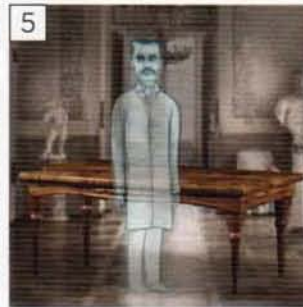
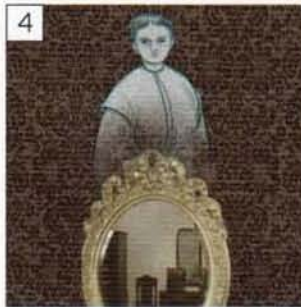
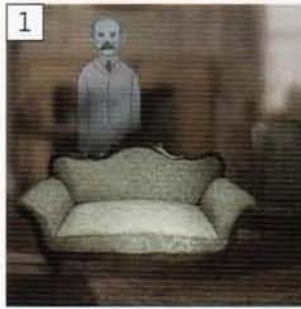
- in /ɪn/
- in front of /ɪn frʌnt əv/
- on /ɒn/
- under /ʌndə/
- behind /bɪ'haɪnd/
- between /bi'twi:n/
- opposite /ə'pəzɪt/
- next to /'nekst tu/
- over /'əʊvə/

b (4 21)) Listen and check.

c In pairs, ask and answer about the pictures.

Where's the ghost?

It's under the bed.



## 2 MOVEMENT

a Match the words and pictures.

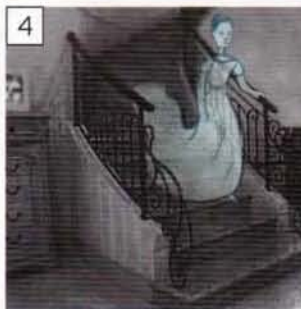
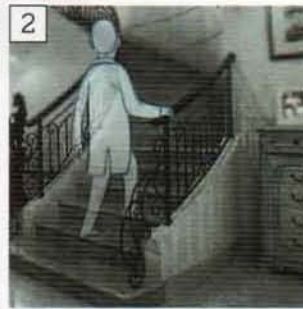
- from...to /frɒm/ /tu/
- into /ɪntu/
- out of /aʊt əv/
- up /ʌp/
- down /daʊn/
- towards /tə'wɔ:dz/

b (4 22)) Listen and check.

c In pairs, ask and answer about the pictures.

Where's the ghost going?

It's going from the bar to room 11.



◀ p.65



# Food

# VOCABULARY BANK



a Match the words and pictures.

### Breakfast /'brekfəst/

- bread /bred/
- butter /'bʌtə/
- cereal /'siəriəl/
- cheese /tʃi:z/
- coffee /'kɒfi/
- eggs /egz/
- jam /dʒæm/
- (orange) juice /dʒu:is/
- milk /milk/
- sugar /'fʊgə/
- 1 tea /ti:/
- toast /təʊst/

### Lunch / dinner /'lʌntʃ/ /'dɪnə/

- fish /fɪʃ/
- meat (steak, chicken, sausages, ham) /mi:t/
- (olive) oil /ɔ:il/
- pasta /'pæstə/
- rice /raɪs/
- salad /'sæləd/

### Vegetables /'vedʒtəblz/

- carrots /'kærəts/
- chips (French fries) /tʃɪps/
- a lettuce /'letɪs/
- mushrooms /'mʌʃrʊmz/
- onions /'ɒnjənz/
- peas /pi:z/
- potatoes /pə'teɪtəʊz/
- tomatoes /tə'mɑ:təʊz/

### Fruit /fru:t/

- apples /'æplz/
- bananas /bə'nɑ:nəz/
- oranges /'ɒrɪndʒɪz/
- a pineapple /'paɪnæpl/
- strawberries /'strɔ:bərɪz/

### Desserts /dɪ'zɜ:ts/

- cake /keɪk/
- fruit salad /fru:t 'sæləd/
- ice cream /aɪs 'kri:m/

### Snacks /snæks/

- biscuits /'bɪskɪts/
- chocolate /'tʃɒklət/
- crisps /krɪps/
- sandwiches /'sænwɪdʒɪz/
- sweets /swi:ts/

b (4 29)) Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.68



# Places and buildings

a Match the words and pictures.

- an art gallery /'ɑ:t gæləri/
- a bridge /brɪdʒ/
- a bus station /'bʌs steɪʃn/
- a car park /'kɑ: pɑ:k/
- a castle /'kɑ:sl/
- a chemist's / a pharmacy /'kemɪsts/ /'fɑ:məsi/
- a church /tʃɜ:tʃ/
- a department store /dɪ'pɑ:tmənt steɪ/
- a hospital /'hɒspɪtl/
- a market /'mɑ:kɪt/
- a mosque /mɒsk/
- a museum /mju:'zi:əm/
- a police station /pə'li:s steɪʃn/
- a post office /'pəʊst ɒfɪs/
- a railway station /'reɪlwei steɪʃn/
- a river /'rɪvə/
- a road /rəʊd/
- a shopping centre / a mall /'ʃɒpɪŋ sentə/ /mɔ:l/
- a square /skweə/
- a street /stri:t/
- a supermarket /'su:pəmə:ki:t/
- a temple /'templ/
- a theatre /'θi:ətə/
- I a town hall /taʊn 'hɔ:l/

b 53)) Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.76





# Irregular verbs

558))























Present	Past simple	Past participle
be /bi:/	was /wɒz/ were /wɜ:/	been /bi:n/
become /br'kʌm/	became /br'keɪm/	become
begin /br'gɪn/	began /br'gæn/	begun /br'gʌn/
break /breɪk/	broke /brəʊk/	broken /'brəʊkən/
bring /brɪŋ/	brought /brɔ:t/	brought
build /bɪld/	built /bɪlt/	built
buy /baɪ/	bought /bɔ:t/	bought
can /kæn/	could /kʊd/	—
catch /kætʃ/	caught /kɔ:t/	caught
come /kʌm/	came /keɪm/	come
cost /kɒst/	cost	cost
do /du:/	did /dɪd/	done /dʌn/
drink /drɪŋk/	drank /dræŋk/	drunk /drʌŋk/
drive /draɪv/	drove /drəʊv/	driven /'drɪvən/
eat /i:t/	ate /eɪt/	eaten /'i:tən/
fall /fɔ:l/	fell /fel/	fallen /'fɔ:lən/
feel /fi:l/	felt /felt/	felt
find /faɪnd/	found /faʊnd/	found
fly /flaɪ/	flew /flu:/	flown /fləʊn/
forget /fə'get/	forgot /fə'gɒt/	forgotten /fə'gɒtən/
get /get/	got /gɒt/	got
give /gɪv/	gave /geɪv/	given /'gɪvən/
go /gəʊ/	went /went/	gone /gɒn/
have /hæv/	had /həd/	had
hear /hɪə/	heard /hɜ:d/	heard
know /nəʊ/	knew /nju:/	known /nəʊn/

Present	Past simple	Past participle
leave /li:v/	left /left/	left
lose /lu:z/	lost /lɒst/	lost
make /meɪk/	made /meɪd/	made
meet /mi:t/	met /met/	met
pay /peɪ/	paid /peɪd/	paid
put /pʊt/	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
run /rʌn/	ran /ræn/	run
say /seɪ/	said /sed/	said
see /si:/	saw /sɔ:/	seen /si:n/
send /send/	sent /sent/	sent
sing /sɪŋ/	sang /sæŋ/	sung /sʌŋ/
sit /sɪt/	sat /sæt/	sat
sleep /sli:p/	slept /slept/	slept
speak /spi:k/	spoke /spəʊk/	spoken /'spəʊkən/
spend /spend/	spent /spent/	spent
stand /stænd/	stood /stʊd/	stood
swim /swɪm/	swam /swæm/	swum /swʌm/
teach /ti:tʃ/	taught /tɔ:t/	taught
take /teɪk/	took /tu:k/	taken /'teɪkən/
tell /tel/	told /təʊld/	told
think /θɪŋk/	thought /θɔ:t/	thought
understand /ʌndə'stænd/	understood /ʌndə'stʊd/	understood
wake /weɪk/	woke /wəʊk/	woken /'wəʊkən/
wear /weə/	wore /wɜ:/	worn /wɜ:n/
win /wɪn/	won /wɒn/	won
write /raɪt/	wrote /rəʊt/	written /'rɪtən/



# Vowel sounds

## SOUND BANK

	usual spelling	! but also		usual spelling	! but also
	i his this film six big swim	English women busy		u bus lunch ugly run lucky cut	come brother son does young
	ee meet three ea speak eat e me we	people police key niece		a* name make ai rain paint ay play day	break steak great eight they grey
	a thanks flat black Japan have stamp			o* home close old don't oa road toast	slow low
	ar garden party start a father glasses dance	aunt		i* nine twice y my why igh high night	buy
	o hot stop coffee long not box	what watch want		ou out thousand house count ow how brown	
	or sport door al talk small aw saw draw	water four bought thought		oi coin noise toilet oy toy enjoy	
	u full put oo good book look room	could would woman		eer beer engineer ere here we're ear year hear	really idea
	oo school food u* June use ew new flew	do fruit juice shoe		air airport stairs fair hair are square careful	their there wear
	Many different spellings. /ə/ is always unstressed. teacher umbrella America famous second ago			A very unusual sound. euro Europe poor sure plural	
	er her verb ir first third ur nurse turn	learn work world word		A sound between /i/ and /i:/. Consonant + y at the end of words is pronounced /i/. happy any thirsty	
	e yes help ten pet very red	friend bread breakfast any said		An unusual sound. education usually situation	













\* especially before consonant + e










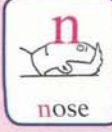


short vowels     long vowels     diphthongs



# Consonant sounds

## SOUND BANK

	usual spelling	! but also
 parrot	<b>p</b> paper pilot Poland sleep <b>pp</b> apple happy	
 bag	<b>b</b> be table job builder number <b>bb</b> rubber	
 key	<b>c</b> credit card actor <b>k</b> kitchen like <b>ck</b> black back	Christmas chemist's
 girl	<b>g</b> green get angry big <b>gg</b> eggs bigger	
 flower	<b>f</b> Friday fifteen wife <b>ph</b> photo elephant <b>ff</b> office coffee	
 vase	<b>v</b> very eleven live travel river love	of
 tie	<b>t</b> tea take student sit <b>tt</b> letter bottle	liked dressed
 dog	<b>d</b> dance understand bad read <b>dd</b> address middle	played tired
 snake	<b>s</b> sister stops <b>ss</b> stress actress <b>ci/ce</b> city cinema centre nice	
 zebra	<b>z</b> zero Brazil <b>s</b> music please dogs watches	
 shower	<b>sh</b> shopping shoes Spanish fish <b>ti (+ vowel)</b> station information	sugar sure
 television	<b>si (+on)</b> revision decision confusion	usually garage

	usual spelling	! but also
 thumb	<b>th</b> think thirty throw bathroom fourth tenth	
 mother	<b>th</b> the these then other that with	
 chess	<b>ch</b> cheap children church <b>tch</b> watch match <b>t (+ure)</b> picture adventure	
 jazz	<b>j</b> January juice July enjoy <b>dge</b> bridge fridge	German manager
 leg	<b>l</b> like little plane girl <b>ll</b> small spelling	
 right	<b>r</b> red rich problem try <b>rr</b> sorry terrible	write wrong
 witch	<b>w</b> window twenty Wednesday win <b>wh</b> why when	one once
 yacht	<b>y</b> yellow yesterday young yes before <b>u</b> use university music student	
 monkey	<b>m</b> man Monday money swim <b>mm</b> summer swimming	
 nose	<b>n</b> no never nine ran <b>nn</b> dinner thinner	know
 singer	<b>ng</b> song England language thing long going	think bank
 house	<b>h</b> happy hungry hotel behind hall head	who whose

voiced  unvoiced